# L'extension fontspec Sélection de fontes pour X¬IETEX et LuaIETEX

# WILL ROBERTSON et KHALED HOSNY will.robertson@latex-project.org

2015/09/24 v2.4e

$\mathbf{T}$	able	des matières			6.3	Changing the currently	
						selected features	15
1	Histor	ique	3		6.4	Priority of feature selection	15
	_				6.5	Different features for dif-	
2	Introd		3			ferent font shapes	16
	2.1	À propos de ce manuel	3		6.6	Different features for dif-	
	2.2	Remerciements	3			ferent font sizes	17
3	Charg	ement de l'extension et op-		7	Font is	ndependent options	18
	tions		4	•	7.1	Colour	18
	3.1	Ajustements sur les fontes			7.2	Scale	19
		mathématiques	4		7.2	Interword space	19
	3.2	Configuration	5		7.4	Post-punctuation space	20
	3.3	Alertes	5		7.5	The hyphenation character	20
					7.6	Optical font sizes	20
					7.0	Optical forit sizes	20
Ι	Gen	eral font selection	5				
4	Font se	election	6	II	Op	enType	22
	4.1	By font name	6				
	4.2	By file name	6	8	Introd		22
					8.1	How to select font features	22
5		ommands to select font fa-		9	Comp	lete listing of OpenType	
	milies		7	9	Comp	iete fistilie of Obellivbe	
					font fo		22
	5.1	More control over font				eatures	23
		shape selection	8		9.1	e <mark>atures</mark> Ligatures	23
	5.1	shape selection			9.1 9.2	Ligatures	23 23
	5.2	shape selection Specifically choosing the NFSS family	8		9.1 9.2 9.3	Ligatures	23 23 24
		shape selection Specifically choosing the NFSS family	10		9.1 9.2 9.3 9.4	Ligatures Letters Numbers Contextuals	23 23 24 25
	<ul><li>5.2</li><li>5.3</li></ul>	shape selection Specifically choosing the NFSS family Choosing additional NFSS font faces	10 10		9.1 9.2 9.3 9.4 9.5	Ligatures Letters Numbers Contextuals Vertical Position	23 23 24 25 25
	<ul><li>5.2</li><li>5.3</li><li>5.4</li></ul>	shape selection Specifically choosing the NFSS family	10		9.1 9.2 9.3 9.4 9.5 9.6	Ligatures Letters Numbers Contextuals Vertical Position Fractions	23 23 24 25 25 26
	<ul><li>5.2</li><li>5.3</li></ul>	shape selection Specifically choosing the NFSS family	10 10 11		9.1 9.2 9.3 9.4 9.5 9.6 9.7	Ligatures Letters Numbers Contextuals Vertical Position Fractions Stylistic Set variations	23 24 25 25 26 27
	<ul><li>5.2</li><li>5.3</li><li>5.4</li></ul>	shape selection Specifically choosing the NFSS family	10 10		9.1 9.2 9.3 9.4 9.5 9.6 9.7 9.8	Ligatures Ligatures Letters Numbers Contextuals Vertical Position Fractions Stylistic Set variations Character Variants	23 24 25 25 26 27 27
6	5.2 5.3 5.4 5.5	shape selection Specifically choosing the NFSS family	10 10 11 12		9.1 9.2 9.3 9.4 9.5 9.6 9.7 9.8 9.9	Ligatures Ligatures Letters Numbers Contextuals Vertical Position Fractions Stylistic Set variations Character Variants Alternates	23 24 25 25 26 27 27 28
6	5.2 5.3 5.4 5.5	shape selection Specifically choosing the NFSS family	10 10 11 12 13		9.1 9.2 9.3 9.4 9.5 9.6 9.7 9.8 9.9 9.10	Ligatures Ligatures Letters Numbers Contextuals Vertical Position Fractions Stylistic Set variations Character Variants Alternates Style	23 24 25 25 26 27 27 28 29
6	5.2 5.3 5.4 5.5	shape selection Specifically choosing the NFSS family	10 10 11 12		9.1 9.2 9.3 9.4 9.5 9.6 9.7 9.8 9.9	Ligatures Ligatures Letters Numbers Contextuals Vertical Position Fractions Stylistic Set variations Character Variants Alternates	23 24 25 25 26 27 27 28

	9.13 9.14	Font transformations Annotation	32 32			e patching/improvem $X 2_{\varepsilon}$ and other pa-	ent
	9.15	CJK shape	33		ges	rac and contact pu	47
	9.16	Character width	33				
	9.17 9.18	Vertical typesetting OpenType scripts and lan-	34	17 I	nner	emphasis	47
	<i>y</i> .10	guages	34	18 U	Jnico	de footnote symbols	48
				19 V	Verba	tim	48
	[ Lua res	TEX-only font fea-	35	20 I	Discre	tionary hyphenation : \-	48
				21 (	omm	ands for old-style and li-	
10	OpenT	ype font feature files	36	1		numbers	48
IV wi	For the Karl		38		fo ends	intspec.sty and	49
11	X <sub>3</sub> T <sub>E</sub> X	only font features	38	22 /	Haadı	er' code	49
	11.1	Mapping	38		22.1	expl3 tools	49
	11.2	Letter spacing	39		2.2	Bits and pieces	49
	11.3	Different font technolo-	•		22.3	Error/warning/info mes-	
	11 /	gies: AAT and OpenType .	39			sages	51
	11.4	Optical font sizes	39	2	22.4	Option processing	54
12	Mac O	S X's AAT fonts	40	2	22.5	Packages	55
	12.1	Ligatures	40	22 7	Г <b>І</b> ь о те	ain maalaana aada	
	12.2	Letters	40	1	23.1	ain package code  Encodings	<b>55</b> 55
	12.3	Numbers	40		23.2	User commands	56
	12.4	Contextuals	40		23.3	Programmer's interface	63
	12.5	Vertical position	41	2	23.4	expl3 interface for font	
	12.6	Fractions	41			loading	67
	12.7	Variants	42	2	23.5	Internal macros	68
	12.8	Alternates	42		23.6	keyval definitions	87
	12.9	Style	43		23.7	Italic small caps	111
	12.10 12.11	CJK shape	43 43		23.8	Selecting maths fonts	
	12.11	Vertical typesetting	43		23.9	Finishing up	
		Diacritics	44	2	23.10	Compatibility	116
	12.14	Annotation	44				
				VII	I f	ontspec.lua	117
$\mathbf{V}$	Prog	gramming interface	44				
	D 4 .			IX	for	1 1	119
13	Definii	ng new features	44		23.11		119
14	Going	behind fontspec's back	45		23.12	Emph	
14	Going	beining tomoped 5 back	<del>1</del> 3	1	23.13	\	
15	Renam	ing existing features & op-			23.14	Verbatims	
	tions	3 0 1	45		23.15	\oldstylenums	122
16	Progra	mming details	46	$ _{\mathbf{X}}$	font	tspec.cfg	123

### 1 Historique

Cette extension débuta sa vie comme une interface LATEX pour sélectionner les fontes présentes sur le système MacOSX dans XATEX de Jonathan Kew, la première variante largement utilisée de TEX gérant Unicode. Avec le temps, XATEX fut étendu pour supporter les fontes Opentype puis fut porté en un programme multiplate-forme pour pouvoir fonctionner avec windows et Linux.

Plus récemment, LuaTEX est rapidement devenu le moteur TEX du moment ; il supporte les encodages Unicode, les fontes Opentype et ouvre les mécaniques internes de TEX par le biais du langage de programmation Lua. ConTEXt Mk. IV de Hans Hagen est une réécriture de son puissant système de composition, tirant pleinement parti des capacités de LuaTEX tel le support des fontes ; une partie centrale de son travail en ce domaine a été extraite pour être utilisée pour d'autres systèmes de commandes TEX et ceci a permis à fontspec d'être adapté à LATEX lorsqu'il tourne avec le moteur LuaTEX.

#### 2 Introduction

**★**The fontspec package allows users of either X∃TEX or LuaTEX to load OpenType fonts in a LateX document. No font installation is necessary, and font features can be selected and used as desired throughout the document.

Without fontspec, it is necessary to write cumbersome font definition files for LATEX, since LATEX's font selection scheme (known as the 'NFSS') has a lot going on behind the scenes to allow easy commands like \emph or \bfseries. With an uncountable number of fonts now available for use, however, it becomes less desirable to have to write these font definition (.fd) files for every font one wishes to use.

Because fontspec is designed to work in a variety of modes, this user documentation is split into separate sections that are designed to be relatively independent. Nonetheless, the basic functionality all behaves in the same way, so previous users of fontspec under X<sub>1</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X should have little or no difficulty switching over to LuaT<sub>E</sub>X.

This manual can get rather in-depth, as there are a lot of details to cover. See the example documents fontspec-xetex.tex and fontspec-luatex.tex for a complete minimal example with each engine.

### 2.1 À propos de ce manuel

This document is typeset with pdfl $\mbox{MTEX}$  using pre-compiled examples that have been generated by either X $\mbox{MTEX}$  or LuaTeX. You may regenerate the examples by removing the doc-files/ subdirectory and typesetting the manual with the following invocation :

pdflatex -shell-escape fontspec.dtx

Note that many of the examples use fonts that are not included in TeX Live or MiKTeX, and some of them are non-free fonts that must be purchased.

I'd like to reduce the number of non-free fonts used in this manual. If you know any freely available fonts that could be used as alternative to any of the fonts in this document, please suggest them to me. Finally, if any aspect of the documentation is unclear or you would like to suggest more examples that could be made, get in touch. (Contributions especially welcome.)

#### 2.2 Remerciements

This package could not have been possible without the early and continued support the author of XaTeX, Jonathan Kew. When I started this package, he steered me many times

in the right direction.

I've had great feedback over the years on feature requests, documentation queries, bug reports, font suggestions, and so on from lots of people all around the world. Many thanks to you all.

Thanks to David Perry and Markus Böhning for numerous documentation improvements and David Perry again for contributing the text for one of the sections of this manual

Special thanks to Khaled Hosny, who had been the driving force behind the support for Lual\*TeX, ultimately leading to version 2.0 of the package.

### 3 Chargement de l'extension et options

For basic use, no package options are required:

\usepackage{fontspec}

Package options will be introduced below; some preliminary details are discussed first:

xunicode Ross Moore's xunicode package is now automatically loaded for users of both XHMTEX and LualMTEX. This package provides backwards compatibility with LMTEX's methods for accessing extra characters and accents (for example, \%, \\$, \textbullet, \"u, and so on), plus many more Unicode characters.

X<sub>3</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X users only The xltxtra package adds some minor extra features to X<sub>3</sub>ET<sub>E</sub>X, including, via the metalogo package, the \XeTeX macro to typeset the X<sub>3</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X logo. While this package was previously recommended, it serves a much smaller rôle nowadays and generally will not be required. Please consult its documentation to assess whether its features are warranted before loading it.

**LuaTeX** users only In order to load fonts by their name rather than by their file-name (*e.g.*, 'Latin Modern Roman' instead of 'ec-lmr10'), you may need to run the script luaotfload-tool, which is distributed with the luaotfload package. Note that if you do not execute this script beforehand, the first time you attempt to typeset the process will pause for (up to) several minutes. (But only the first time.) Please see the luaotfload documentation for more information.

babel *The babel package is not really supported!* Especially Vietnamese, Greek, and Hebrew at least might not work correctly, as far as I can tell. There's a better chance with Cyrillic and Latin-based languages, however—fontspec ensures at least that fonts should load correctly. The polyglossia package is recommended instead as a modern replacement for babel.

#### 3.1 Ajustements sur les fontes mathématiques

By default, fontspec adjusts LaTeX's default maths setup in order to maintain the correct Computer Modern symbols when the roman font changes. However, it will attempt to avoid doing this if another maths font package is loaded (such as mathpazo or the unicodemath package).

If you find that fontspec is incorrectly changing the maths font when it should be leaving well enough alone, apply the <code>[no-math]</code> package option to manually suppress its maths font.

Example 1: Loading the default, sans serif, and monospaced fonts.

\setmainfont{TeX Gyre Bonum}
\setsansfont{Latin Modern Sans}[Scale=MatchLowercase]
\setmonofont{Inconsolata}[Scale=MatchLowercase]

Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs

\rmfamily Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs\par
\sffamily Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs\par
\ttfamily Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs

#### 3.2 Configuration

If you wish to customise any part of the fontspec interface, this should be done by creating your own fontspec.cfg file, which will be automatically loaded if it is found by  $X_{\overline{A}}I_{\overline{E}}X$  or Lua $I_{\overline{E}}X$ . A fontspec.cfg file is distributed with fontspec with a small number of defaults set up within it.

To customise fontspec to your liking, use the standard .cfg file as a starting point or write your own from scratch, then either place it in the same folder as the main document for isolated cases, or in a location that  $X_{\overline{A}}T_{\overline{E}}X$  or LuaTeX searches by default; e.g. in MacTeX: ~/Library/texmf/tex/latex/.

The package option <code>[no-config]</code> will suppress the loading of the <code>fontspec.cfg</code> file under all circumstances.

#### 3.3 Alertes

This package can give many warnings that can be harmless if you know what you're doing. Use the <code>[quiet]</code> package option to write these warnings to the transcript (.log) file instead.

Use the [silent] package option to completely suppress these warnings if you don't even want the .log file cluttered up.

# Première partie

# General font selection

This section concerns the variety of commands that can be used to select fonts.

These are the main font-selecting commands of this package. The \fontspec command selects a font for one-time use; all others should be used to define the standard fonts used in a document, as shown in Example 1. Here, the scales of the fonts have been chosen to equalise their lowercase letter heights. The Scale font feature will be discussed further in Section 7 on page 18, including methods for automatic scaling.

The font features argument accepts comma separated  $\langle \textit{font feature} \rangle = \langle \textit{option} \rangle$  lists; these are described in later:

- For general font features, see Section 7 on page 18
- For OpenType fonts, see Part II on page 22
- For XaTeX-only general font features, see Part IV on page 38
- For LuaTEX-only general font features, see Part III on page 36
- For features for AAT fonts in X<sub>7</sub>T<sub>F</sub>X, see Section 12 on page 40

#### 4 Font selection

In both LuaTeX and XaTeX, fonts can be selected either by 'font name' or by 'file name'.

#### 4.1 By font name

Fonts known to LuaTeX or XaTeX may be loaded by their standard names as you'd speak them out loud, such as *Times New Roman* or *Adobe Garamond*. 'Known to' in this case generally means 'exists in a standard fonts location' such as ~/Library/Fonts on Mac OS X, or C:\Windows\Fonts on Windows.

The simplest example might be something like

```
\setmainfont{Cambria}[ ... ]
```

in which the bold and italic fonts will be found automatically (if they exist) and are immediately accessible with the usual \textit and \textbf commands.

TODO: add explanation for how to find out what the 'font name' is.

#### 4.2 By file name

X=TEX and LuaTeX also allow fonts to be loaded by file name instead of font name. When you have a very large collection of fonts, you will sometimes not wish to have them all installed in your system's font directories. In this case, it is more convenient to load them from a different location on your disk. This technique is also necessary in X=TEX when loading OpenType fonts that are present within your TEX distribution, such as /usr/local/texlive/2013/texmf-dist/fonts/opentype/public. Fonts in such locations are visible to X=TEX but cannot be loaded by font name, only file name; LuaTEX does not have this restriction.

When selecting fonts by file name, any font that can be found in the default search paths may be used directly (including in the current directory) without having to explicitly define the location of the font file on disk.

Fonts selected by filename must include bold and italic variants explicitly.

```
\setmainfont{texgyrepagella-regular.otf}[
    BoldFont = texgyrepagella-bold.otf ,
    ItalicFont = texgyrepagella-italic.otf ,
    BoldItalicFont = texgyrepagella-bolditalic.otf ]
```

fontspec knows that the font is to be selected by file name by the presence of the '.otf' extension. An alternative is to specify the extension separately, as shown following :

```
\setmainfont{texgyrepagella-regular}[
    Extension = .otf ,
    BoldFont = texgyrepagella-bold ,
    ... ]
```

If desired, an abbreviation can be applied to the font names based on the mandatory 'font name' argument:

```
\setmainfont{texgyrepagella}[
    Extension = .otf ,
    UprightFont = *-regular ,
    BoldFont = *-bold ,
    ... ]
```

In this case 'texgyrepagella' is no longer the name of an actual font, but is used to construct the font names for each shape; the \* is replaced by 'texgyrepagella'. Note in this case that UprightFont is required for constructing the font name of the normal font to use.

To load a font that is not in one of the default search paths, its location in the filesystem must be specified with the Path feature :

Note that XaTeX and LuaTeX are able to load the font without giving an extension, but fontspec must know to search for the file; this can can be indicated by declaring the font exists in an 'ExternalLocation':

```
\setmainfont{texgyrepagella-regular}[
    ExternalLocation ,
    BoldFont = texgyrepagella-bold ,
    ... ]
```

To be honest, Path and ExternalLocation are actually the same feature with different names. The former can be given without an argument and the latter can be given with one; the different names are just for clarity.

#### 5 New commands to select font families

For cases when a specific font with a specific feature set is going to be re-used many times in a document, it is inefficient to keep calling \fontspec for every use. While the \fontspec command does not define a new font instance after the first call, the feature options must still be parsed and processed.

\newfontfamily

For this reason, new commands can be created for loading a particular font family with the \newfontfamily command, demonstrated in Example 2. This macro should be used to create commands that would be used in the same way as \rmfamily, for example. If you would like to create a command that only changes the font inside its argument (i.e., the same behaviour as \emph) define it using regular LaTeX commands:

```
\newcommand\textnote[1]{{\notefont #1}}
\textnote{This is a note.}
```

Note that the double braces are intentional; the inner pair are used to to delimit the scope of the font change.

\newfontface

Sometimes only a specific font face is desired, without accompanying italic or bold variants being automatically selected. This is common when selecting a fancy italic font,

Example 2: Defining new font families.				
This is a <i>note</i> .	\newfontfamily\notefont{Kurier} \notefont This is a \emph{note}.			
Example 3 : D	Example 3 : Defining a single font face.			
\newfontfaceHoefler Text Itali				

say, that has swash features unavailable in the upright forms. \newfontface is used for this purpose, shown in Example 3, which is repeated in Section 12.4 on page 40.

Comment for advanced users: The commands defined by \newfontface and \newfontfamily include their encoding information, so even if the document is set to use a legacy TEX encoding, such commands will still work correctly. For example,

```
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage{fontspec}
\newfontfamily\unicodefont{Lucida Grande}
\usepackage{mathpazo}
\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
\begin{document}
A legacy \TeX\ font. {\unicodefont A unicode font.}
\end{document}
```

#### 5.1 More control over font shape selection

```
\label{eq:boldFont} \begin{split} & \operatorname{BoldFont} = \langle font \ name \rangle \\ & \operatorname{ItalicFont} = \langle font \ name \rangle \\ & \operatorname{BoldItalicFont} = \langle font \ name \rangle \\ & \operatorname{SlantedFont} = \langle font \ name \rangle \\ & \operatorname{BoldSlantedFont} = \langle font \ name \rangle \\ & \operatorname{SmallCapsFont} = \langle font \ name \rangle \\ \end{split}
```

The automatic bold, italic, and bold italic font selections will not be adequate for the needs of every font: while some fonts mayn't even have bold or italic shapes, in which case a skilled (or lucky) designer may be able to chose well-matching accompanying shapes from a different font altogether, others can have a range of bold and italic fonts to chose among. The BoldFont and ItalicFont features are provided for these situations. If only one of these is used, the bold italic font is requested as the default from the *new* font. See Example 4.

If a bold italic shape is not defined, or you want to specify *both* custom bold and italic shapes, the BoldItalicFont feature is provided.

#### 5.1.1 Input shorthands

For those cases that the base font name is repeated, you can replace it with an asterisk. (This has been shown previously in Section 4.2 on page 6.) For example, some space can be

Example 4: Explicit selection of the bold font.

#### Helvetica Neue UltraLight

Helvetica Neue UltraLight Italic Helvetica Neue Helvetica Neue Italic

```
saved instead of writing 'Baskerville SemiBold':
   \setmainfont{Baskerville}[BoldFont={* SemiBold}]
   As a matter of fact, this feature can also be used for the upright font too:
   \setmainfont{Baskerville}[UprightFont={* SemiBold},BoldFont={* Bold}]
```

#### 5.1.2 Small caps and slanted font shapes

For the rare situations where a font family will have slanted *and* italic shapes, these may be specified separately using the analogous features SlantedFont and BoldSlantedFont. Without these, however, the LaTeX font switches for slanted (\textsl, \slshape) will default to the italic shape.

Old-fashioned font families used to distribute their small caps glyphs in separate fonts due to the limitations on the number of glyphs allowed in the PostScript Type 1 format. Such fonts may be used by declaring the SmallCapsFont of the family you are specifying:

```
\fontspec{Minion MM Roman}[
   SmallCapsFont={Minion MM Small Caps & Oldstyle Figures}
]
Roman 123 \\ \textsc{Small caps 456}
```

In fact, you may specify the small caps font for each individual bold and italic shape as in

```
\fontspec{ <upright> }[
  UprightFeatures = { SmallCapsFont={ <sc> } } ,
  BoldFeatures = { SmallCapsFont={ <bf sc> } } ,
  ItalicFeatures = { SmallCapsFont={ <it sc> } } ,
  BoldItalicFeatures = { SmallCapsFont={ <bf it sc> } } ,
  Roman 123 \\ \textsc{Small caps 456}
```

For most modern fonts that have small caps as a font feature, this level of control isn't generally necessary, but you may still occasionally find font families in which the small caps are in a separate font.

All of the bold, italic, and small caps fonts can be loaded with different font features from the main font. See Section 6.5 for details. When an OpenType font is selected for SmallCapsFont, the small caps font feature is *not* automatically enabled. In this case, users should write instead, if necessary,

```
\fontspec{...}[
   SmallCapsFont={...},
   SmallCapsFeatures={Letters=SmallCaps},
]
```

#### 5.2 Specifically choosing the NFSS family

In LATEX's NFSS, font families are defined with names such as 'pp1' (Palatino), 'cmr' (Computer Modern Roman), and so on, which are selected with the \fontfamily command:

```
\fontfamily{ppl}\selectfont
```

In fontspec, the family names are auto-generated based on the fontname of the font; for example, writing \fontspec{Times New Roman} for the first time would generate an internal font family name of 'TimesNewRoman(1)'.

In certain cases it is desirable to be able to choose this internal font family name so it can be re-used elsewhere for interacting with other packages that use the LATEX's font selection interface; an example might be

```
\usepackage{fancyvrb}
```

\fvset{fontfamily=myverbatimfont}

To select a font for use in this way in fontspec use the NFSSFamily feature: 1

\newfontfamily\verbatimfont[NFSSFamily=myverbatimfont]{Inconsolata}

It is then possible to write commands such as:

```
\fontfamily{myverbatimfont}\selectfont
```

which is essentially the same as writing \verbatimfont, or to go back to the orignal example:

```
\fvset{fontfamily=myverbatimfont}
```

Only use this feature when necessary; the in-built font switching commands that fontspec generates (such as \verbatimfont in the example above) are recommended in all other cases.

If you don't wish to explicitly set the NFSS family but you would like to know what it is, an alternative mechanism for package writers is introduced as part of the fontspec programming interface; see the function \fontspec\_set\_family: Nnn for details (Section 16 on page 46).

#### 5.3 Choosing additional NFSS font faces

Let TeX's font selection scheme is more flexible than the fontspec interface discussed up until this point. It assigns to each font face a family (discussed above), a series such as bold or light or condensed, and a shape such as italic or slanted or small caps. The fontspec features such as BoldFont and so on all assign faces for the default series and shapes of the NFSS, but it's not uncommon to have font families that have multiple weights and shapes and so on.

If you set up a regular font family with the 'standard four' (upright, bold, italic, and bold italic) shapes and then want to use, say, a light font for a certain document element, many users will be perfectly happy to use  $\mbox{newfontface}\space(\mbox{switch})$  and use the resulting font  $\space{switch}$ . In other cases, however, it is more convenient or even necessary to load additional fonts using additional NFSS specifiers.

```
FontFace = {\langle series \rangle} {\langle shape \rangle} { Font = \langle font \ name \rangle , \langle features \rangle } FontFace = {\langle series \rangle} {\langle shape \rangle} {\langle font \ name \rangle}
```

The font thus specified will inherit the font features of the main font, with optional addition  $\langle \textit{features} \rangle$  as requested. (Note that the optional  $\{\langle \textit{features} \rangle\}$  argument is still surrounded with curly braces.) Multiple FontFace commands may be used in a single declaration to specify multiple fonts. As an example :

 $<sup>1. \</sup> Thanks to Luca \ Fascione \ for \ the \ example \ and \ motivation \ for \ finally \ implementing \ this \ feature.$ 

```
\setmainfont{font1.otf}[
  FontFace = {c}{n}{ font2.otf } ,
  FontFace = {c}{m}{ Font = font3.otf , Color = red }
]
```

Writing \fontseries{c}\selectfont will result in font2 being selected, which then followed by \fontshape{m}\selectfont will result in font3 being selected (in red). A font face that is defined in terms of a different series but a normal shape will attempt to find a matching small caps feature and define that face as well if appropriate. Conversely, a font faced defined in terms of a different font will not.

There are some standards for choosing shape and series codes; the LaTeX  $2_{\epsilon}$  font selection guide  $^2$  lists series m for medium, b for bold, bx for bold extended, sb for semi-bold, and c for condensed. A far more comprehensive listing is included in Appendix A of Philipp Lehman's 'The Font Installation Guide'  $^3$  covering 14 separate weights and 12 separate widths.

The FontFace command also interacts properly with the SizeFeatures command as follows: (nonsense set of font selection choices)

Note that if the first Font feature is omitted then each size needs its own inner Font declaration.

#### 5.4 Math(s) fonts

When \setmainfont, \setsansfont and \setmonofont are used in the preamble, they also define the fonts to be used in maths mode inside the \mathrm-type commands. This only occurs in the preamble because Lagarance that fonts after this stage of the processing. The fontspec package must also be loaded after any maths font packages (e.g., euler) to be successful. (Actually, it is only euler that is the problem. 4)

Note that fontspec will not change the font for general mathematics; only the upright and bold shapes will be affected. To change the font used for the mathematical symbols, see either the mathspec package or the unicode-math package.

Note that you may find that loading some maths packages won't be as smooth as you expect since fontspec (and XHTEX in general) breaks many of the assumptions of TEX as to where maths characters and accents can be found. Contact me if you have troubles, but I can't guarantee to be able to fix any incompatibilities. The Lucida and Euler maths fonts should be fine; for all others keep an eye out for problems.

- 2. texdoc fntguide
- 3. texdoc fontinstallationguide
- $4. \label{thm:continuous} Speaking of euler, if you want to use its [mathbf] option, it won't work, and you'll need to put this after fontspec is loaded instead: $$ \left(DeclareMathAlphabet\mathbf{U}_{eur}_{b}^{1}\right)$$$

However, the default text fonts may not necessarily be the ones you wish to use when typesetting maths (especially with the use of fancy ligatures and so on). For this reason, you may optionally use the commands above (in the same way as our other \fontspeclike commands) to explicitly state which fonts to use inside such commands as \mathrm. Additionally, the \setboldmathrm command allows you define the font used for \mathrm when in bold maths mode (which is activated with, among others, \boldmath).

For example, if you were using Optima with the Euler maths font, you might have this in your preamble :

```
\usepackage{mathpazo}
\usepackage{fontspec,xunicode}
\setmainfont{Optima}
\setmathrm{Optima}
\setboldmathrm[BoldFont={Optima ExtraBlack}]{Optima Bold}
```

#### 5.5 Miscellaneous font selecting details

**The optional argument** — **from v2.4** For the first decade of fontspec's life, optional font features were selected with a bracketed argument before the font name, as in :

```
\setmainfont[
  lots and lots ,
  and more and more ,
  an excessive number really ,
  of font features could go here
]{myfont.otf}
```

This always looked like ugly syntax to me, and the order of these arguments has now been reversed:

```
\setmainfont{myfont.otf}[
  lots and lots ,
  and more and more ,
  an excessive number really ,
  of font features could go here
]
```

I hope this doesn't cause any problems.

1. Backwards compatibility has been preserved. (In fact, you could even write

```
\fontspec[Ligatures=Rare]{myfont.otf}[Color=red]
```

if you really felt like it and both sets of features would be applied.)

2. Following standard xparse behaviour, there must be no space before the opening bracket; writing

```
\fontspec{myfont.otf}_[Color=red]
```

will result in [Color=red] not being recognised an argument and therefore it will be typeset as text. When breaking over lines, write either of:

```
\fontspec{myfont.otf}% \fontspec{myfont.otf}[
[Color=red] Color=Red]
```

**Spaces** \fontspec and \addfontfeatures ignore trailing spaces as if it were a 'naked' control sequence; e.g., 'M. \fontspec{...} N' and 'M. \fontspec{...}N' are the same.

Example 5: A demonstration of the \defaultfontfeatures command.

```
\fontspec{TeX Gyre Adventor}
Some default text 0123456789 \\
\defaultfontfeatures{
    Numbers=OldStyle, Color=888888
}
\fontspec{TeX Gyre Adventor}
Now grey, with old-style figures:
0123456789
```

#### Some default text 0123456789

Now grey, with old-style figures: 0123456789

**Italic small caps** Note that this package redefines the \itshape and \scshape commands in order to allow them to select italic small caps in conjunction.

**Emphasis and nested emphasis** You may specify the behaviour of the \emph command by setting the \emph command. *E.g.*, for bold emphasis :

\renewcommand\emshape{\bfseries}

Nested emphasis is controlled by the  $\ensuremath{\verb| eminnershape|}$  to produce small caps:

\renewcommand\eminnershape{\scshape}

This functionality is provided with the same interface as the fixltx2e package, with a slightly different internal implementation.

# 6 Selecting font features

The commands discussed so far such as \fontspec each take an optional argument for accessing the font features of the requested font. Commands are provided to set default features to be applied for all fonts, and even to change the features that a font is presently loaded with. Different font shapes can be loaded with separate features, and different features can even be selected for different sizes that the font appears in. This section discusses these options.

#### **6.1** Default settings

```
\defaultfontfeatures(\langle font features \rangle)
```

It is sometimes useful to define font features that are applied to every subsequent font selection command. This may be defined with the \defaultfontfeatures command, shown in Example 5. New calls of \defaultfontfeatures overwrite previous ones, and defaults can be reset by calling the command with an empty argument.

```
\defaultfontfeatures[\langle font name \rangle] \{\langle font features \rangle\}
```

Default font features can be specified on a per-font and per-face basis by using the optional argument to \defaultfontfeatures as shown.<sup>5</sup>

```
\defaultfontfeatures[TeX Gyre Adventor]{Color=blue}
\setmainfont{TeX Gyre Adventor}% will be blue
```

<sup>5.</sup> Internally,  $\langle font \ name \rangle$  has all spaces removed and is converted to lowercase.

Multiple fonts may be affected by using a comma separated list of font names.

```
\verb|\defaultfontfeatures[\langle \verb| font-switch \rangle]| \{\langle \textit{font features} \rangle\}|
```

**New in v2.4.** Defaults can also be applied to symbolic families such as those created with the \newfontfamily command and for \rmfamily, \sffamily, and \ttfamily:

```
\defaultfontfeatures[\rmfamily,\sffamily]{Ligatures=TeX}
\setmainfont{TeX Gyre Adventor}% will use standard TeX ligatures
```

The line above to set TEX-like ligatures is now activated by *default* in fontspec.cfg. To reset default font features, simply call the command with an empty argument:

```
\defaultfontfeatures[\rmfamily,\sffamily]{}
\setmainfont{TeX Gyre Adventor}% will no longer use standard TeX ligatures
```

**New in v2.4.** Using the + form of the command appends the  $\langle font \ features \rangle$  to any already-selected defaults.

#### 6.2 Default settings from a file

In addition to the defaults that may be specified in the document as described above, when a font is first loaded, a configuration file is searched for with the name  $\langle fontname \rangle$ . fontspec'. <sup>6</sup>

The contents of this file can be used to specify default font features without having to have this information present within each document.  $\langle fontname \rangle$  is stripped of spaces and file extensions are omitted; for example, the line above for TEX Gyre Adventor could be placed in a file called TeXGyreAdventor. fontspec, or for specifying options for texgyreadventor-regular.otf (when loading by filename), the configuration file would be texgyreadventor-regular.fontspec. (N.B. the lettercase of the names should match.)

This mechanism can be used to define custom names or aliases for your font collections. If you create a file MyCharis.fontspec containing, say,

```
\defaultfontfeatures[My Charis]
{
   Extension = .ttf ,
   UprightFont = CharisSILR,
   BoldFont = CharisSILB,
   ItalicFont = CharisSILI,
   BoldItalicFont = CharisSILBI,
   % <any other desired options>
}
```

you can load that custom family with  $fontspec\{My\ Charis\}$  and similar. The optional argument to defaultfontfeatures must match that requested by the font loading command fontspec, etc.), else the options won't take effect.

Finally, note that options for font faces can also be defined in this way. To continue the example above, here we colour the different faces :

```
\defaultfontfeatures[CharisSILR]{Color=blue}
\defaultfontfeatures[CharisSILB]{Color=red}
```

And such configuration lines can be stored either inline inside My Charis.fontspec or within their own .fontspec files; in this way, fontspec is designed to handle 'nested' configuration options as well.

<sup>6.</sup> Located in the current folder or within a standard texmf location.

Example 6 : A demonstration of the \addfontfeatures command. Note the caveat listed in the text regarding such usage.

'In 1842, 999 people sailed 97 miles in 13 boats. In 1923, 111 people sailed 54 miles in 56 boats.'

 Year
 People
 Miles
 Boats

 1842
 999
 75
 13

 1923
 111
 54
 56

#### 6.3 Changing the currently selected features

 $\addfontfeatures\{\langle font\ features\rangle\}$ 

This command allows font features to be changed without knowing what features are currently selected or even what font is being used. A good example of this could be to add a hook to all tabular material to use monospaced numbers, as shown in Example 6. Note however that the behaviour in this regard will be unreliable (subject to the font itself) if you attempt to *change* an already selected feature. *E.g.*, this sort of thing can cause troubles :

\end{tabular}}

```
\addfontfeature{Numbers=OldStyle}...\addfontfeature{Numbers=Lining}...
123
```

With both features active, how will the font render '123'? Depends on the font. In the distant future this functionality will be re-written to avoid this issue (giving 'Numbers=OldStyle' the smarts to know to explicitly de-activate any previous instances of 'Numbers=Lining', and vice-versa, but as I hope you can imagine this requires a fair degree of elbow grease which I haven't had available for some time now.

\addfontfeature

This command may also be executed under the alias \addfontfeature.

#### 6.4 Priority of feature selection

Features defined with  $\addfontfeatures$  override features specified by  $\defaultfontfeatures$ . If in doubt, whenever a new font is chosen for the first time, an entry is made in the transcript (.log) file displaying the font name and the features requested.

#### Example 7: Features for, say, just italics.

Attention All Martini Drinkers Attention All Martini Drinkers \fontspec{Hoefler Text} \itshape \scshape
Attention All Martini Drinkers \\
\addfontfeature{ItalicFeatures={Alternate = 1}}
Attention All Martini Drinkers \\

Example 8: An example of setting the SmallCapsFeatures separately for each font shape.

```
\fontspec{TeX Gyre Termes}[
                                        UprightFeatures={Color = 220022,
                                             SmallCapsFeatures = {Color=115511}},
                                        ItalicFeatures={Color = 2244FF,
                                             SmallCapsFeatures = {Color=112299}},
                                           BoldFeatures={Color = FF4422,
                                             SmallCapsFeatures = {Color=992211}},
                                    BoldItalicFeatures={Color = 888844,
                                             SmallCapsFeatures = {Color=444422}},
Upright SMALL CAPS
                                   Upright {\scshape Small Caps}\\
Italic Italic Small Caps
                                   \itshape Italic {\scshape Italic Small Caps}\\
Bold Bold Small Caps
                                   \upshape\bfseries Bold {\scshape Bold Small Caps}\\
Bold Italic Bold Italic Small Caps
                                   \itshape Bold Italic {\scshape Bold Italic Small Caps}
```

#### 6.5 Different features for different font shapes

```
BoldFeatures=\{\langle \textit{features} \rangle\} \\ ItalicFeatures=\{\langle \textit{features} \rangle\} \\ BoldItalicFeatures=\{\langle \textit{features} \rangle\} \\ SlantedFeatures=\{\langle \textit{features} \rangle\} \\ BoldSlantedFeatures=\{\langle \textit{features} \rangle\} \\ SmallCapsFeatures=\{\langle \textit{features} \rangle\} \\
```

It is entirely possible that separate fonts in a family will require separate options; *e.g.*, Hoefler Text Italic contains various swash feature options that are completely unavailable in the upright shapes.

The font features defined at the top level of the optional \fontspec argument are applied to *all* shapes of the family. Using Upright-, SmallCaps-, Bold-, Italic-, and BoldItalicFeatures, separate font features may be defined to their respective shapes *in addition* to, and with precedence over, the 'global' font features. See Example 7.

Note that because most fonts include their small caps glyphs within the main font, features specified with SmallCapsFeatures are applied *in addition* to any other shape-specific features as defined above, and hence SmallCapsFeatures can be nested within ItalicFeatures and friends. Every combination of upright, italic, bold and small caps can thus be assigned individual features, as shown in the somewhat ludicrous Example 8.

Example 9 : An example of specifying different font features for different sizes of font with SizeFeatures.

Table 1 – Syntax for specifying the size to apply custom font features.

Input	Font size, s
Size = X-	$s \geqslant X$
Size = -Y	s < Y
Size = X-Y	$X \leqslant s < Y$
Size = X	s = X

#### 6.6 Different features for different font sizes

```
SizeFeatures = {
...
{ Size = \langle size range \rangle, \langle font features \rangle },
{ Size = \langle size range \rangle, Font = \langle font name \rangle, \langle font features \rangle },
...
}
```

The SizeFeature feature is a little more complicated than the previous features discussed. It allows different fonts and different font features to be selected for a given font family as the point size varies.

It takes a comma separated list of braced, comma separated lists of features for each size range. Each sub-list must contain the Size option to declare the size range, and optionally Font to change the font based on size. Other (regular) fontspec features that are added are used on top of the font features that would be used anyway. A demonstration to clarify these details is shown in Example 9. A less trivial example is shown in the context of optical font sizes in Section 7.6 on page 20.

To be precise, the Size sub-feature accepts arguments in the form shown in **Table 1**. Braces around the size range are optional. For an exact font size (Size=X) font sizes chosen near that size will 'snap'. For example, for size definitions at exactly 11pt and 14pt, if a 12pt font is requested *actually* the 11pt font will be selected. This is a remnant of the past when fonts were designed in metal (at obviously rigid sizes) and later when bitmap fonts were similarly designed for fixed sizes.

If additional features are only required for a single size, the other sizes must still be specified. As in :

```
SizeFeatures={
    {Size=-10,Numbers=Uppercase},
    {Size=10-}}
```

Otherwise, the font sizes greater than 10 won't be defined at all!

Example 10 : Selecting colour with transparency. N.B. due to a conflict between fontspec and the preview package, this example currently does not show any transparency!



\fontsize{48}{48}
\fontspec{TeX Gyre Bonum Bold}
{\addfontfeature{Color=FF000099}W}\kern-0.5ex
{\addfontfeature{Color=0000FF99}S}\kern-0.4ex
{\addfontfeature{Color=DDBB2299}P}\kern-0.4ex
{\addfontfeature{Color=00BB3399}R}

**Interaction with other features** For SizeFeatures to work with ItalicFeatures, BoldFeatures, etc., and SmallCapsFeatures, a strict heirarchy is required:

```
UprightFeatures =
{
    SizeFeatures =
    {
        {
            Size = -10,
            Font = ..., % if necessary
            SmallCapsFeatures = {...},
            ... % other features for this size range
        },
        ... % other size ranges
    }
}
```

Suggestions on simplifying this interface welcome.

# 7 Font independent options

Features introduced in this section may be used with any font.

#### 7.1 Colour

Color (or Colour), also shown in Section 6.1 on page 13 and elsewhere, uses font specifications to set the colour of the text. The colour is defined as a triplet of two-digit Hex RGB values, with optionally another value for the transparency (where 00 is completely transparent and FF is opaque.) Transparency is supported by Lual\*TEX; XFL\*TEX with the xdvipdfmx driver does not support this feature.

If you load the xcolor package, you may use any named colour instead of writing the colours in hexadecimal.

```
\usepackage{xcolor}
...
\fontspec[Color=red]{Verdana} ...
\definecolor{Foo}{rgb}{0.3,0.4,0.5}
\fontspec[Color=Foo]{Verdana} ...
```

The color package is *not* supported; use xcolor instead.

You may specify the transparency with a named colour using the Opacity feature which takes an decimal from zero to one corresponding to transparent to opaque respectively:

Example 11: Automatically calculated scale values.

\setmainfont{Georgia}
\newfontfamily\lc[Scale=MatchLowercase]{Verdana}
The perfect match {\lc is hard to find.}\\
\newfontfamily\uc[Scale=MatchUppercase]{Arial}
L O G O \uc F O N T

The perfect match is hard to find. LOGOFONT

```
\fontspec[Color=red,Opacity=0.7]{Verdana} ...
```

It is still possible to specify a colour in six-char hexadecimal form while defining opacity in this way, if you like.

#### 7.2 Scale

```
Scale = \langle number \rangle
Scale = MatchLowercase
Scale = MatchUppercase
```

In its explicit form, Scale takes a single numeric argument for linearly scaling the font, as demonstrated in Example 1. It is now possible to measure the correct dimensions of the fonts loaded and calculate values to scale them automatically.

As well as a numerical argument, the Scale feature also accepts options MatchLowercase and MatchUppercase, which will scale the font being selected to match the current default roman font to either the height of the lowercase or uppercase letters, respectively; these features are shown in Example 11.

The amount of scaling used in each instance is reported in the .log file. Since there is some subjectivity about the exact scaling to be used, these values should be used to fine-tune the results.

Note that when Scale=MatchLowercase is used with \setmainfont, the new 'main' font of the document will be scaled to match the old default. This may be undesirable in some cases, so to achieve 'natural' scaling for the main font but automatically scale all other fonts selected, you may write

```
\defaultfontfeatures{ Scale = MatchLowercase }
\defaultfontfeatures[\rmfamily]{ Scale = 1}
```

One or both of these lines may be placed into a local fontspec.cfg file (see Section 3.2 on page 5) for this behaviour to be effected in your own documents automatically. (Also see Section 6.1 on page 13 for more information on setting font defaults.)

#### 7.3 Interword space

While the space between words can be varied on an individual basis with the TEX primitive \spaceskip command, it is more convenient to specify this information when the font is first defined.

The space in between words in a paragraph will be chosen automatically, and generally will not need to be adjusted. For those times when the precise details are important, the WordSpace feature is provided, which takes either a single scaling factor to scale the default value, or a triplet of comma-separated values to scale the nominal value, the stretch, and the shrink of the interword space by, respectively. (WordSpace= $\{x\}$  is the same as WordSpace= $\{x,x,x\}$ .)

Example 12 : Scaling the default interword space. An exaggerated value has been chosen to emphasise the effects here.

Some text for our example to take up some space, and to demonstrate the default interword space.

Some text for our example to take up some space, and to demonstrate the default interword space.

\fontspec{TeX Gyre Termes}
Some text for our example to take
up some space, and to demonstrate
the default interword space.
\bigskip

\addfontfeature{ WordSpace = 0.3 }
Some text for our example to take
up some space, and to demonstrate
the default interword space.

Example 13: Scaling the default post-punctuation space.

\nonfrenchspacing
\fontspec{TeX Gyre Schola}
Letters, Words. Sentences.

\text{Nords. Sentences.} \par
\fontspec{TeX Gyre Schola}[PunctuationSpace=0]
\text{Letters, Words. Sentences.} \text{Letters, W

#### 7.4 Post-punctuation space

If \frenchspacing is *not* in effect, TEX will allow extra space after some punctuation in its goal of justifying the lines of text. Generally, this is considered old-fashioned, but occasionally in small amounts the effect can be justified, pardon the pun.

The PunctuationSpace feature takes a scaling factor by which to adjust the nominal value chosen for the font; this is demonstrated in Example 13. Note that PunctuationSpace=0 is *not* equivalent to \frenchspacing, although the difference will only be apparent when a line of text is under-full.

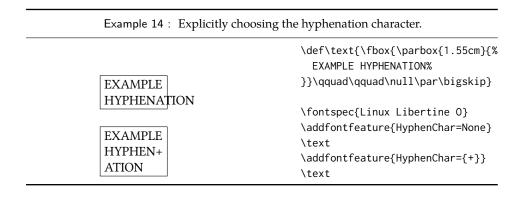
#### 7.5 The hyphenation character

The letter used for hyphenation may be chosen with the HyphenChar feature. It takes three types of input, which are chosen according to some simple rules. If the input is the string None, then hyphenation is suppressed for this font. If the input is a single character, then this character is used. Finally, if the input is longer than a single character it must be the UTF-8 slot number of the hyphen character you desire.

This package redefines LaTeX's \- macro such that it adjusts along with the above changes.

#### 7.6 Optical font sizes

Optically scaled fonts thicken out as the font size decreases in order to make the glyph shapes more robust (less prone to losing detail), which improves legibility. Conversely, at



Example 15: A demonstration of automatic optical size selection.

\fontspec{Latin Modern Roman}
Automatic optical size \\
Automatic optical size \scalebox{0.4}{\Huge}
Automatic optical size \text{Automatic optical size}

large optical sizes the serifs and other small details may be more delicately rendered.

OpenType fonts with optical scaling will exist in several discrete sizes, and these will be selected by X<sub>H</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X and LuaT<sub>E</sub>X *automatically* determined by the current font size as in Example 15, in which we've scaled down some large text in order to be able to compare the difference for equivalent font sizes.

The OpticalSize option may be used to specify a different optical size. With OpticalSize set to zero, no optical size font substitution is performed, as shown in Example 16.

The SizeFeatures feature (Section 6.6 on page 17) can be used to specify exactly which optical sizes will be used for ranges of font size. For example, something like:

Example 16: Optical size substitution is suppressed when set to zero.

```
\fontspec{Latin Modern Roman 5 Regular}[OpticalSize=0]
Latin Modern optical sizes \\
Latin Modern optical sizes
\fontspec{Latin Modern Roman 12 Regular}[OpticalSize=0]
Latin Modern optical sizes \\
\fontspec{Latin Modern Roman 17 Regular}[OpticalSize=0]
Latin Modern optical sizes
\fontspec{Latin Modern Roman 17 Regular}[OpticalSize=0]
Latin Modern optical sizes
```

# Deuxième partie

# **OpenType**

#### 8 Introduction

OpenType fonts (and other 'smart' font technologies such as AAT and Graphite) can change the appearance of text in many different ways. These changes are referred to as features. When the user applies a feature — for example, small capitals — to a run of text, the code inside the font makes appropriate adjustments and small capitals appear in place of lowercase letters. However, the use of such features does not affect the underlying text. In our small caps example, the lowercase letters are still stored in the document; only the appearance has been changed by the OpenType feature. This makes it possible to search and copy text without difficulty. If the user selected a different font that does not support small caps, the 'plain' lowercase letters would appear instead.

Some OpenType features are required to support particular scripts, and these features are often applied automatically. The scripts used in India, for example, often require that characters be reshaped and reordered after they are typed by the user, in order to display them in the traditional ways that readers expect. Other features can be applied to support a particular language. The Junicode font for medievalists uses by default the Old English shape of the letter thorn, while in modern Icelandic thorn has a more rounded shape. If a user tags some text as being in Icelandic, Junicode will automatically change to the Icelandic shape through an OpenType feature that localizes the shapes of letters.

A very large group of OpenType features is designed to support high quality typography in Latin, Greek, Cyrillic and other standard scripts. Examples of some font features have already been shown in previous sections; the complete set of OpenType font features supported by fontspec is described below in Section 9.

The OpenType specification provides four-letter codes (e.g., smcp for small capitals) for each feature. The four-letter codes are given below along with the fontspec names for various features, for the benefit of people who are already familiar with OpenType. You can ignore the codes if they don't mean anything to you.

#### 8.1 How to select font features

Font features are selected by a series of  $\langle feature \rangle = \langle option \rangle$  selections. Features are (usually) grouped logically; for example, all font features relating to ligatures are accessed by writing Ligatures={...} with the appropriate argument(s), which could be TeX, Rare, etc., as shown below in Section 9.1.

Multiple options may be given to any feature that accepts non-numerical input, although doing so will not always work. Some options will override others in generally obvious ways; Numbers={OldStyle,Lining} doesn't make much sense because the two options are mutually exclusive, and XqTpX will simply use the last option that is specified (in this case using Lining over OldStyle).

If a feature or an option is requested that the font does not have, a warning is given in the console output. As mentioned in Section 3.3 on page 5 these warnings can be suppressed by selecting the [quiet] package option.

Table 2 – Options for the OpenType font feature 'Ligatures'.

Feature	Option		Tag
Ligatures =	Required NoRequired Common NoCommon Contextual NoContextual Rare/Discretionary Historic TeX	*	rlig rlig (deactivate) liga liga (deactivate) clig clig (deactivate) dlig hlig tlig/trep

<sup>\*</sup> This feature is activated by default.

Example 17: An example of the Ligatures feature.

 $strict \rightarrow strict$   $wurtzite \rightarrow wurtzite$   $firefly \rightarrow firefly$ 

\def\test#1#2{%
 #2 \$\to\$ {\addfontfeature{#1} #2}\\}
\fontspec{Linux Libertine 0}
\test{Ligatures=Historic}{strict}
\test{Ligatures=Rare}{wurtzite}
\test{Ligatures=NoCommon}{firefly}

# 9 Complete listing of OpenType font features

#### 9.1 Ligatures

Ligatures refer to the replacement of two separate characters with a specially drawn glyph for functional or æsthetic reasons. The list of options, of which multiple may be selected at one time, is shown in Table 2. A demonstration with the Linux Libertine fonts <sup>7</sup> is shown in Example 17.

Note the additional features accessed with Ligatures=TeX. These are not actually real OpenType features, but additions provided by luaotfload (i.e., LuaTeX only) to emulate TeX's behaviour for ASCII input of curly quotes and punctuation. In XeTeX this is achieved with the Mapping feature (see Section 11.1 on page 38) but for consistency Ligatures=TeX will perform the same function as Mapping=tex-text.

#### 9.2 Letters

The Letters feature specifies how the letters in the current font will look. OpenType fonts may contain the following options: Uppercase, SmallCaps, PetiteCaps, UppercaseSmallCaps, UppercasePetiteCaps, and Unicase.

Petite caps are smaller than small caps. SmallCaps and PetiteCaps turn lowercase letters into the smaller caps letters, whereas the Uppercase... options turn the *capital* letters

<sup>7.</sup> http://www.linuxlibertine.org/

Table 3 – Options for the OpenType font feature 'Letters'.

Feature	Option	Tag
Letters =	Uppercase	case
	SmallCaps	smcp
	PetiteCaps	рсар
	UppercaseSmallCaps	c2sc
	UppercasePetiteCaps	c2pc
	Unicase	unic

Example 18: Small caps from lowercase or uppercase letters.

\fontspec{TeX Gyre Adventor}[Letters=SmallCaps]
THIS SENTENCE no verb \\
THIS SENTENCE NO VERB \fontspec{TeX Gyre Adventor}[Letters=UppercaseSmallCaps]
THIS SENTENCE no verb

into the smaller caps (good, *e.g.*, for applying to already uppercase acronyms like 'NASA'). This difference is shown in Example 18. 'Unicase' is a weird hybrid of upper and lower case letters

Note that the Uppercase option will (probably) not actually map letters to uppercase. <sup>8</sup> It is designed to select various uppercase forms for glyphs such as accents and dashes, such as shown in Example 19; note the raised position of the hyphen to better match the surrounding letters.

The Kerning feature also contains an Uppercase option, which adds a small amount of spacing in between letters (see Section 9.12 on page 31).

#### 9.3 Numbers

The Numbers feature defines how numbers will look in the selected font, accepting options shown in Table 4.

The synonyms Uppercase and Lowercase are equivalent to Lining and OldStyle, respectively. The differences have been shown previously in Section 6.3 on page 15. The Monospaced option is useful for tabular material when digits need to be vertically aligned.

The SlashedZero option replaces the default zero with a slashed version to prevent confusion with an uppercase 'O', shown in Example 20.

8. If you want automatic uppercase letters, look to LATEX's \MakeUppercase command.

Example 19 : An example of the Uppercase option of the Letters feature.

\[
\frac{\fontspec{\Linux Libertine 0}}{\UPPER-CASE example \\} \\
\text{UPPER-CASE example} \addfontfeature{\Letters=Uppercase}}{\UPPER-CASE example} \\
\text{UPPER-CASE example} \text{UPPER-CASE example}

Table 4 – Options for the OpenType font feature 'Numbers'.

Feature	Option	Tag
Numbers =	Uppercase/Lining	lnum
	Lowercase/OldStyle	onum
	Proportional	pnum
	Monospaced	tnum
	SlashedZero	zero
	Arabic	anum

The Arabic option (with tag anum) maps regular numerals to their Arabic script or Persian equivalents based on the current Language setting (see Section 9.18 on page 34), shown in Example 21 using the Persian Modern font, which is included in TeX Live and MiKTeX. This option is based on a LuaTeX feature of the luaotfload package, not an OpenType feature. (Thus, this feature is unavailable in XeTeX.)

#### 9.4 Contextuals

This feature refers to substitutions of glyphs that vary 'contextually' by their relative position in a word or string of characters; features such as contextual swashes are accessed via the options shown in Table 5.

Historic forms are accessed in OpenType fonts via the feature Style=Historic; this is generally *not* contextual in OpenType, which is why it is not included in this feature.

#### 9.5 Vertical Position

The VerticalPosition feature is used to access things like subscript (Inferior) and superscript (Superior) numbers and letters (and a small amount of punctuation, sometimes). The Ordinal option will only raise characters that are used in some languages directly after a number. The ScientificInferior feature will move glyphs further below the baseline

Example 21: An example of number remapping to Arabic or Persian. (LuaTEX only.)

	\fontspec{persian-modern-regular.ttf}% [Script=Arabic,Numbers=Arabic]
° 17860777 °	<pre>{\addfontfeature{Language=Arabic}   0123456789} \\</pre>
0 1774057X9	<pre>{\addfontfeature{Language=Parsi} 0123456789}</pre>

Table 5 – Options for the OpenType font feature 'Contextuals'.

Feature	Option	Tag
Contextuals =	Swash	cswh
	Alternate	calt
	WordInitial	init
	WordFinal	fina
	LineFinal	falt
	Inner	medi

Table 6 – Options for the OpenType font feature 'VerticalPosition'.

Feature	Option	Tag
VerticalPosition =	Superior	sups
	Inferior	subs
	Numerator	numr
	Denominator	dnom
	Scientific Inferior	sinf
	Ordinal	ordn

than the Inferior feature. These are shown in Example 22

Numerator and Denominator should only be used for creating arbitrary fractions (see next section).

The realscripts package (which is also loaded by xltxtra for  $X_{\overline{A}}T_{\overline{E}}X$ ) redefines the \textsubscript and \textsuperscript commands to use the above font features automatically, including for use in footnote labels. If this is the only feature of xltxtra you wish to use, consider loading realscripts on its own instead.

#### 9.6 Fractions

For OpenType fonts use a regular text slash to create fractions, but the Fraction feature must be explicitly activated. Some (Asian fonts predominantly) also provide for the Alternate feature. These are both shown in Example 23.

Example 22: The VerticalPosition feature.

\fontspec{LibreCaslonText-Regular.otf}[VerticalPosition=Superior]
Superior: 1234567890 \\
\fontspec{LibreCaslonText-Regular.otf}[VerticalPosition=Numerator]

Numerator: 12345 \\

\fontspec{LibreCaslonText-Regular.otf}[VerticalPosition=ScientificInferior]

45 Scientific Inferior: 12345

Superior: 1234567890 Numerator: 12345

Denominator: 12345 Scientific Inferior: 12345

Table 7 – Options for the OpenType font feature 'Fractions'.

Feature	Option	Tag
Fractions =	On	frac
	Alternate	afrc

 ${\sf Example~23:~The~Fractions~feature.}$ 

1/2 1/4 5/6 13579/24680  $\frac{1}{2}$   $\frac{1}{4}$   $\frac{5}{6}$  13579/24680  $\frac{1}{2}$   $\frac{1}{4}$   $\frac{5}{6}$  13579/24680

\fontspec{Hiragino Maru Gothic Pro W4}
1/2 \quad 1/4 \quad 5/6 \quad 13579/24680 \\
\addfontfeature{Fractions=On}
1/2 \quad 1/4 \quad 5/6 \quad 13579/24680 \\
\addfontfeature{Fractions=Alternate}
1/2 \quad 1/4 \quad 5/6 \quad 13579/24680 \\

#### 9.7 Stylistic Set variations

This feature selects a 'Stylistic Set' variation, which usually corresponds to an alternate glyph style for a range of characters (usually an alphabet or subset thereof). This feature is specified numerically. These correspond to OpenType features ss01, ss02, etc.

Two demonstrations from the Junicode font  $^9$  are shown in Example 24 and Example 25; thanks to Adam Buchbinder for the suggestion.

Multiple stylistic sets may be selected simultaneously by writing, e.g., StylisticSet={1,2,3}. The StylisticSet feature is a synonym of the Variant feature for AAT fonts. See Section 13 on page 44 for a way to assign names to stylistic sets, which should be done on a per-font basis.

#### 9.8 Character Variants

Similar to the 'Stylistic Sets' above, 'Character Variations' are selected numerically to adjust the output of (usually) a single character for the particular font. These correspond to the OpenType features cv01 to cv99.

For each character that can be varied, it is possible to select among possible options for that particular glyph. For example, in Example 26 a variety of glyphs for the character 'v' are selected, in which 5 corresponds to the character 'v' for this font feature, and the trailing  $:\langle n\rangle$  corresponds to which variety to choose. Georg Duffner's open source Garamond

Example 24 : Insular letterforms, as used in medieval Northern Europe, for the Junicode font accessed with the StylisticSet feature.

Insular forms. Inrulap ropmr.	\fontspec{Junicode} Insular forms. \\ \addfontfeature{StylisticSet=2} Insular forms. \\
----------------------------------	---

<sup>9.</sup> http://junicode.sf.net

Example 25: Enlarged minuscules (capital letters remain unchanged) for the Junicode font, accessed with the StylisticSet feature.

ENLARGED Minuscules.
ENLARGED Minuscules.
ENLARGED Minuscules.

ENLARGED Minuscules.
\ddfontfeature{StylisticSet=6}
ENLARGED Minuscules. \\

Example 26: The CharacterVariant feature showing off Georg Duffner's open source Garamond revival font.

```
very

very

very

very

\text{fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}} \text{very \\
\fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}[CharacterVariant=5] \text{very \\}
\text{fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}[CharacterVariant=5:0] \text{very \\}
\text{fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}[CharacterVariant=5:1] \text{very \\}
\text{fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}[CharacterVariant=5:2] \text{very \\}
\text{fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}[CharacterVariant=5:3] \text{very \\}
\text{fontspec{EB Gar
```

revival font <sup>10</sup> is used in this example. Character variants are specifically designed not to conflict with each other, so you can enable them individually per character as shown in Example 27. (Unlike stylistic alternates, say.)

Note that the indexing starts from zero.

#### 9.9 Alternates

The Alternate feature (for the raw OpenType feature salt) is used to access alternate font glyphs when variations exist in the font, such as in Example 28. It uses a nu-

10. http://www.georgduffner.at/ebgaramond/

Example 27: The CharacterVariant feature selecting multiple variants simultaneously.

Example 28 : The Alternate feature.	
А& h А& ђ	<pre>\fontspec{Linux Libertine 0} \textsc{a} \&amp; h \\ \addfontfeature{Alternate=0} \textsc{a} \&amp; h</pre>

Table 8 – Options for the OpenType font feature 'Style'.

Featur	re Option	Tag
Style	= Alternate	salt
-	Italic	ital
	Ruby	ruby
	Swash	swsh
	Historic	hist
	TitlingCaps	titl
	HorizontalKana	hkna
	VerticalKana	vkna

merical selection, starting from zero, that will be different for each font. Note that the Style=Alternate option is equivalent to Alternate=0 to access the default case.

Note that the indexing starts from zero.

See Section 13 on page 44 for a way to assign names to alternates, which must be done on a per-font basis.

#### **9.10** Style

'Ruby' refers to a small optical size, used in Japanese typography for annotations. For fonts with multiple salt OpenType features, use the fontspec Alternate feature instead.

Example 29 and Example 30 both contain glyph substitutions with similar characteristics. Note the occasional inconsistency with which font features are labelled; a long-tailed 'Q' could turn up anywhere!

In other features, larger breadths of changes can be seen, covering the style of an entire alphabet. See Example 31 and Example 32; in the latter, the Italic option affects the Latin text and the Ruby option the Japanese.

Note the difference here between the default and the horizontal style kana in Example 33: the horizontal style is slightly wider.

Example 29: Example of the Alternate option of the Style feature.		
M Q W M Q W	Quattro M Q W S M Q W	11

Example 30 : Example of the Historic option of the Style feature.		
	\fontspec{Adobe Jenson Pro}	
MQZ	M Q Z	
MOZ	\addfontfeature{Style=Historic}	
MQZ	M Q Z	

${\sf Example \ 31: Example \ of \ the \ Titling Caps \ option \ of \ the \ Style \ feature.}$			
		\fontspec{Adobe Garamond Pro}	
	TITLING CAPS	TITLING CAPS	\\
	TITLING CARS	\addfontfeature{Style=TitlingCaps}	
	TITLING CAPS	TITLING CAPS	

Example 32: Example of the Italic and Ruby options of the Style feature.

```
\fontspec{Hiragino Mincho Pro}
Latin ようこそ ワカヨタレソ Latin \kana \\
Latin ようこそ ワカヨタレソ \addfontfeature{Style={Italic, Ruby}}
Latin \kana
```

 $\label{thm:example 33} \textbf{Example of the Horizontal} \textbf{Kana and Vertical} \textbf{Kana options of the Style feature}.$ 

ようこそ ワカヨタレソ	<pre>\fontspec{Hiragino Mincho Pro}   \kana \\ {\addfontfeature{Style=HorizontalKana}</pre>
ようこそ ワカヨタレソ	\kana } \\
ようこそ ワカヨタレソ	<pre>{\addfontfeature{Style=VerticalKana}   \kana }</pre>

Table 9 – Options for the OpenType font feature 'Diacritics'.

Feature	Option	Tag	
Diacritics	= MarkToBase NoMarkToBase		(deactivate)
	MarkToMark NoMarkToMark AboveBase	* mkmk : mkmk : abvm	(deactivate)
	NoAboveBase BelowBase	abvm * blwm	(deactivate)
	NoBelowBase	blwm	(deactivate)

<sup>\*</sup> This feature is activated by default.

Table 10 – Options for the OpenType font feature 'Kerning'.

Feature	Option	Ta	g	
Kerning =	Uppercase On	cp * ke		
	Off	ke	rn	(deactivate)

<sup>\*</sup> This feature is activated by default.

#### 9.11 Diacritics

Specifies how combining diacritics should be placed. These will usually be controlled automatically according to the Script setting.

#### 9.12 Kerning

Specifies how inter-glyph spacing should behave. Well-made fonts include information for how differing amounts of space should be inserted between separate character pairs. This kerning space is inserted automatically but in rare circumstances you may wish to turn it off.

As briefly mentioned previously at the end of Section 9.2 on page 23, the Uppercase option will add a small amount of tracking between uppercase letters, seen in Example 34, which uses the Romande fonts <sup>11</sup> (thanks to Clea F. Rees for the suggestion). The Uppercase option acts separately to the regular kerning controlled by the On/Off options.

Example 34 : Adding extra kerning for uppercase letters. (The difference is usually very small.)

	\fontspec{Romande ADF Std Bold}
LIDDEDCACE EXAMPLE	UPPERCASE EXAMPLE \\
UPPERCASE EXAMPLE	\addfontfeature{Kerning=Uppercase}
UPPERCASE EXAMPLE	UPPERCASE EXAMPLE

<sup>11.</sup> http://arkandis.tuxfamily.org/adffonts.html

Example 35: Articifial font transformations.		
		\fontspec{Charis SIL} \emph{ABCxyz} \fontspec{Charis SIL}[FakeSlant=0.2] ABCxyz
ABCxyz	ABCxyz	\fontspec{Charis SIL} ABCxyz \fontspec{Charis SIL}[FakeStretch=1.2] ABCxyz
ABCxyz ABCxyz	ABCxyz ABCxyz	\fontspec{Charis SIL} \textbf{ABCxyz} \fontspec{Charis SIL}[FakeBold=1.5] ABCxyz

Example 36: Annotation forms for OpenType fonts.

```
123456789
(1) (2) (3) (4) (5) (6) (7) (8) (9)
(1 (2 (3 (4 (5 (6 (7 (8 (9
1) 2) 3) 4) 5) 6) 7) 8) 9)
(1) (2) (3) (4) (5) (6) (7) (8) (9)
0 2 8 4 5 6 7 8 9
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
                           \fontspec{Hiragino Maru Gothic Pro}
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
                           1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
123456789
                           \def\x#1{\\\\}
023456789
                                   1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 }}
1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9.
                           x0\x1\x2\x3\x4\x5\x6\x7\x7\x8\x9
```

#### 9.13 Font transformations

In rare situations users may want to mechanically distort the shapes of the glyphs in the current font such as shown in Example 35. Please don't overuse these features; they are *not* a good alternative to having the real shapes.

If values are omitted, their defaults are as shown above.

If you want the bold shape to be faked automatically, or the italic shape to be slanted automatically, use the AutoFakeBold and AutoFakeSlant features. For example, the following two invocations are equivalent:

```
\fontspec[AutoFakeBold=1.5]{Charis SIL}
\fontspec[BoldFeatures={FakeBold=1.5}]{Charis SIL}
```

If both of the AutoFake... features are used, then the bold italic font will also be faked.

The FakeBold and AutoFakeBold features are only available with the  $X_{\overline{1}}T_{\overline{1}}X$  engine and will be ignored in Lua $T_{\overline{1}}X$ .

#### 9.14 Annotation

Some fonts are equipped with an extensive range of numbers and numerals in different forms. These are accessed with the Annotation feature (OpenType feature nalt), selected numerically as shown in Example 36.

Note that the indexing starts from zero.

Table 11 – Options for the OpenType font feature 'CJKShape'.

Feature	Option	Tag
CJKShape =		trad smpl jp78 jp83 jp90 expt
	NLC	nlck

 $\label{eq:main_example_37} \textbf{Example 37}: \ Different standards for CJK ideograph presentation.$ 

	\fontspec{Hiragino Mincho Pro}
地工作序 44 44 44 54	{\addfontfeature{CJKShape=Traditional}
唖噛躯 妍并訝	\text } \\
唖噛躯 姸幷訝	{\addfontfeature{CJKShape=NLC}
<sup>1</sup> 型 1 图 3 图 3 图 3 图 3 图 3 图 3 图 3 图 3 图 3 图	\text } \\
啞嚙軀 妍并訝	{\addfontfeature{CJKShape=Expert}
型出一国 夕四 夕月 7万 百月	<pre>\text }</pre>

#### 9.15 CJK shape

There have been many standards for how CJK ideographic glyphs are 'supposed' to look. Some fonts will contain many alternate glyphs available in order to be able to display these gylphs correctly in whichever form is appropriate. Both AAT and OpenType fonts support the following CJKShape options: Traditional, Simplified, JIS1978, JIS1983, JIS1990, and Expert. OpenType also supports the NLC option.

#### 9.16 Character width

Many Asian fonts are equipped with variously spaced characters for shoe-horning into their generally monospaced text. These are accessed through the CharacterWidth feature.

Japanese alphabetic glyphs (in Hiragana or Katakana) may be typeset proportionally, to better fit horizontal measures, or monospaced, to fit into the rigid grid imposed by ideo-

Table 12 – Options for the OpenType font feature 'CharacterWidth'.

Feature	Option	Tag
CharacterWidth =	1	pwid fwid hwid twid qwid
	AlternateHalf	halt

#### Example 38: Proportional or fixed width forms.

Example 39: Numbers can be compressed significantly.

graphic typesetting. In this latter case, there are also half-width forms for squeezing more kana glyphs (which are less complex than the kanji they are amongst) into a given block of space. The same features are given to roman letters in Japanese fonts, for typesetting foreign words in the same style as the surrounding text.

The same situation occurs with numbers, which are provided in increasingly illegible compressed forms seen in Example 39.

#### 9.17 Vertical typesetting

TODO!

ようこそ

ようこそ

ようこそ

ワカヨタレソ

ワカヨタレソ

ワカヨタレソ

abcdef

abcdef

abcdef

#### 9.18 OpenType scripts and languages

Fonts that include glyphs for various scripts and languages may contain different font features for the different character sets and languages they support, and different font features may behave differently depending on the script or language chosen. When multilingual fonts are used, it is important to select which language they are being used for, and more importantly what script is being used.

The 'script' refers to the alphabet in use; for example, both English and French use the Latin script. Similarly, the Arabic script can be used to write in both the Arabic and Persian languages.

The Script and Language features are used to designate this information. The possible options are tabulated in Table 13 on page 36 and Table 14 on page 37, respectively. When a script or language is requested that is not supported by the current font, a warning is printed in the console output.

Example 40: An example of various Scripts and Languages.

\testfeature{Script=Arabic}{\arabictext} મર્યાદા-સૂયક નવિદન ર્મયાદા-સૂયક નિવેદન \testfeature{Script=Devanagari}{\devanagaritext} \testfeature{Script=Bengali}{\bengalitext} നമ്മടപൊരബര്യ നമ്മുടെ പാരബര്യ \testfeature{Script=Gujarati}{\gujaratitext} ਆਦ ਸਿਚੂ ਜੁਗਾਦ ਸਿਚੂ ਆਦਿ ਸਚੂ ਜੁਗਾਦਿ ਸਚੂ \testfeature{Script=Malayalam}{\malayalamtext} \testfeature{Script=Gurmukhi}{\gurmukhitext} தமிழ் தடேி தமிழ் தேடி \testfeature{Script=Tamil}{\tamiltext} רְדְתָּה רִבָּתה \testfeature{Script=Hebrew}{\hebrewtext} \def\examplefont{Doulos SIL} cấp số mỗi cấp số mỗi \testfeature{Language=Vietnamese}{\vietnamesetext}

Because these font features can change which features are able to be selected for the font, they are automatically selected by fontspec before all others and, if  $X_{\overline{1}}T_{\overline{1}}X_$ 

#### 9.18.1 Script and Language examples

In the examples shown in Example 40, the Code2000 font  $^{12}$  is used to typeset various input texts with and without the OpenType Script applied for various alphabets. The text is only rendered correctly in the second case; many examples of incorrect diacritic spacing as well as a lack of contextual ligatures and rearrangement can be seen. Thanks to Jonathan Kew, Yves Codet and Gildas Hamel for their contributions towards these examples.

#### 9.18.2 Defining new scripts and languages

\newfontscript
\newfontlanguage

While the scripts and languages listed in Table 13 and Table 14 are intended to be comprehensive, there may be some missing; alternatively, you might wish to use different names to access scripts/languages that are already listed. Adding scripts and languages can be performed with the \newfontscript and \newfontlanguage commands. For example,

\newfontscript{Arabic}{arab}
\newfontlanguage{Zulu}{ZUL}

The first argument is the fontspec name, the second the OpenType tag. The advantage to using these commands rather than \newfontfeature (see Section 13 on page 44) is the error-checking that is performed when the script or language is requested.

<sup>12.</sup> http://www.code2000.net/

### Troisième partie

# LuaT<sub>E</sub>X-only font features

## 10 OpenType font feature files

An OpenType font feature file is a plain text file describing OpenType layout feature of a font in a human-readable format. The syntax of OpenType feature files is defined by  $Adobe^{13}$ .

Feature files can be used to add or customize OpenType features of a font on the fly without editing the font file itself.

Adding a new OpenType feature is as creating a plain text file defining the new feature and then loading it by passing its name or path to FeatureFile, then OpenType features defined in the file can be activated as usual.

For example, when adding one of the default features like kern or liga, no special activation is needed. On the other hand, an optional feature like onum or smcp will be activated when old style numbers or small capitals are activated, respectively. However, Open-Type feature in the feature file can have any and that can be used to selectively activate the feature; for example defining a ligature feature called mlig and then activating it using RawFeature option without activating other ligatures in the font.

Figure 1 shows an example feature file. The first two lines set the script and language under which the defined features will be available, which the default language in both default and Latin scripts, respectively.

Then it defines a liga feature, which is a glyph substitution feature. The names starting with backslash are glyph names that is to be substituted and while the leading backslash is optional, it is used to escape glyph names when they interfere with preserved keywords. It should also be noted that glyph names are font specific and the same glyph can be named differently in different fonts.

13. http://www.adobe.com/devnet/opentype/afdko/topic\_feature\_file\_syntax.html

Table 13 – Defined Scripts for OpenType fonts. Aliased names are shown in adjacent positions marked with red pilcrows ( $\P$ ).

Arabic	Ethiopic	Limbu	Sumero-Akkadian Cun-
Armenian	Georgian	Linear B	form
Balinese	Glagolitic	Malayalam	Syloti Nagri
Bengali	Gothic	¶Math	Syriac
Bopomofo	Greek	¶Maths	Tagalog
Braille	Gujarati	Mongolian	Tagbanwa
Buginese	Gurmukhi	Musical Symbols	Tai Le
Buhid	Hangul Jamo	Myanmar	Tai Lu
Byzantine Music	Hangul	N'ko	Tamil
Canadian Syllabics	Hanunoo	Ogham	Telugu
Cherokee	Hebrew	Old Italic	Thaana
¶CJK	¶Hiragana and Katakana	Old Persian Cuneiform	Thai
¶CJK Ideographic	¶Kana	Oriya	Tibetan
Coptic	Javanese	Osmanya	Tifinagh
Cypriot Syllabary	Kannada	Phags-pa	Ugaritic Cuneiform
Cyrillic	Kharosthi	Phoenician	Yi
Default	Khmer	Runic	
Deseret	Lao	Shavian	
Devanagari	Latin	Sinhala	

Table 14 – Defined Languages for OpenType fonts. Aliased names are shown in adjacent positions marked with red pilcrows ( $\P$ ).

Abaza	Default	lgbo 	Koryak	Norway House Cree	Saraiki
Abkhazian	Dogri	ljo 	Ladin	Nisi	Serer
Adyghe	Divehi	llokano	Lahuli	Niuean	South Slavey
Afrikaans	Djerma	Indonesian	Lak 	Nkole	Southern Sami
Afar	Dangme	Ingush	Lambani	N'ko	Suri
Agaw	Dinka	Inuktitut	Lao	Dutch	Svan
Altai	Dungan	Irish	Latin	Nogai	Swedish
Amharic	Dzongkha	Irish Traditional	Laz	Norwegian	Swadaya Aramaic
Arabic	Ebira	Icelandic	L-Cree	Northern Sami	Swahili
Aari	Eastern Cree	Inari Sami	Ladakhi	Northern Tai	Swazi
Arakanese	Edo	Italian	Lezgi	Esperanto	Sutu
Assamese	Efik	Hebrew	Lingala	Nynorsk	Syriac
Athapaskan	Greek	Javanese	Low Mari	Oji-Cree	Tabasaran
Avar	English	Yiddish	Limbu	Ojibway	Tajiki ::
Awadhi	Erzya	Japanese	Lomwe	Oriya	Tamil
Aymara	Spanish	Judezmo	Lower Sorbian	Oromo	Tatar
Azeri	Estonian	Jula	Lule Sami	Ossetian	TH-Cree
Badaga	Basque	Kabardian	Lithuanian	Palestinian	Telugu
Baghelkhandi	Evenki	Kachchi	Luba	Aramaic	Tongan
Balkar	Even	Kalenjin	Luganda	Pali	Tigre
Baule	Ewe	Kannada	Luhya	Punjabi	Tigrinya
Berber	French Antillean	Karachay	Luo	Palpa	Thai
Bench	¶Farsi	Georgian	Latvian	Pashto	Tahitian
Bible Cree	¶Parsi	Kazakh	Majang	Polytonic Greek	Tibetan
Belarussian	¶Persian	Kebena	Makua	Pilipino	Turkmen
Bemba	Finnish	Khutsuri Georgian	Malayalam	Palaung	Temne
Bengali	Fijian	Khakass	Traditional	Polish	Tswana
Bulgarian	Flemish	Khanty-Kazim	Mansi	Provencal	Tundra Nenets
Bhili	Forest Nenets	Khmer	Marathi	Portuguese	Tonga
Bhojpuri	Fon	Khanty-Shurishkar	Marwari	Chin	Todo Turkish
Bikol	Faroese	Khanty-Vakhi	Mbundu Manchu	Rajasthani R-Cree	
Bilen Blackfoot	French Frisian	Khowar	Moose Cree	Russian Buriat	Tsonga
Balochi	Friulian	Kikuyu Kirabia	Mende		Turoyo Aramaic Tulu
Balante	Futa	Kirghiz Kisii	Me'en	Riang Rhaeto-Romanic	Tuvin
Balti	Fulani	Kokni	Mizo	Romanian	Twi
Bambara	Ga	Kalmyk	Macedonian	Romany	Udmurt
Bamileke	Gaelic	Kamba	Male	Rusyn	Ukrainian
Breton	Gagauz	Kumaoni	Malagasy	Ruanda	Urdu
Brahui	Galician	Komo	Malinke	Russian	Upper Sorbian
Braj Bhasha	Garshuni	Komso	Malayalam	Sadri	Uyghur
Burmese	Garhwali	Kanuri	Reformed	Sanskrit	Uzbek
Bashkir	Ge'ez	Kodagu	Malay	Santali	Venda
Beti	Gilyak	Korean Old Hangul	Mandinka	Sayisi	Vietnamese
Catalan	Gumuz	Konkani	Mongolian	Sekota	Wa
Cebuano	Gondi	Kikongo	Manipuri	Selkup	Wagdi
Chechen	Greenlandic	Komi-Permyak	Maninka	Sango	West-Cree
Chaha Gurage	Garo	Korean	Manx Gaelic	Shan	Welsh
Chattisgarhi	Guarani	Komi-Zyrian	Moksha	Sibe	Wolof
Chichewa	Gujarati	Kpelle	Moldavian	Sidamo	Tai Lue
Chukchi	Haitian	Krio	Mon	Silte Gurage	Xhosa
Chipewyan	Halam	Karakalpak	Moroccan	Skolt Sami	Yakut
Cherokee	Harauti	Karelian	Maori	Slovak	Yoruba
Chuvash	Hausa	Karaim	Maithili	Slavey	Y-Cree
Comorian	Hawaiin	Karen	Maltese	Slovenian	Yi Classic
Coptic	Hammer-Banna	Koorete	Mundari	Somali	Yi Modern
Cree	Hiligaynon	Kashmiri	Naga-Assamese	Samoan	Chinese Hong Kong
Carrier	Hindi	Khasi	Nanai	Sena	Chinese Phonetic
Crimean Tatar	High Mari	Kildin Sami	Naskapi	Sindhi	Chinese Simplified
Church Slavonic	Hindko	Kui	N-Cree	Sinhalese	Chinese Traditional
Czech	Но	Kulvi	Ndebele	Soninke	Zande
Danish	Harari	Kumyk	Ndonga	Sodo Gurage	Zulu
Dargwa	Croatian	Kurdish	Nepali	Sotho	
Woods Cree	Hungarian	Kurukh	Newari	Albanian	
German	Armenian	Kuy	Nagari	Serbian	
		-	27		

```
languagesystem DFLT dflt;
languagesystem latn dflt;

# Ligatures
feature liga {
    sub \f \i by \fi;
    sub \f \l by \fl;
} liga;

# Kerning
feature kern {
    pos \A \Y -200;
    pos \a \y -80;
} kern;
```

Example 41 :  $X_{\overline{1}}T_{\overline{1}}X's$  Mapping feature.

Glyph positioning features like kerning can be defined in a similar way, but instead of the keyword sub(stitute) the keyword pos(ition) is used instead. Figure 1 shows an example of adding kerning between AY and ay  $^{14}$ .

Lines starting with # are comments and will be ignored.

An OpenType feature file can have any number of features and can have a mix of substitution and positioning features, please refer to the full feature file specification for further documentation.

## Quatrième partie

## Fonts and features with X<sub>T</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X

## 11 X<sub>H</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X-only font features

The features described here are available for any font selected by fontspec.

## 11.1 Mapping

Mapping enables a XaTeX text-mapping scheme, shown in Example 41.

Using the tex-text mapping is also equivalent to writing Ligatures=TeX. The use of the latter syntax is recommended for better compatibility with LuaTeX documents.

<sup>14.</sup> The kerning is expressed in font design units which are fractions of em depending on the *units per em* value of the font, usually 1000 for PostScript fonts and 2048 for TrueType fonts.

\fontspec{Didot}
\addfontfeature{LetterSpace=0.0}
USE TRACKING FOR DISPLAY CAPS TEXT \\
\addfontfeature{LetterSpace=2.0}
USE TRACKING FOR DISPLAY CAPS TEXT

USE TRACKING FOR DISPLAY CAPS TEXT USE TRACKING FOR DISPLAY CAPS TEXT

## 11.2 Letter spacing

Letter spacing, or tracking, is the term given to adding (or subtracting) a small amount of horizontal space in between adjacent characters. It is specified with the LetterSpace, which takes a numeric argument, shown in Example 42.

The letter spacing parameter is a normalised additive factor (not a scaling factor); it is defined as a percentage of the font size. That is, for a  $10\,\mathrm{pt}$  font, a letter spacing parameter of '1.0' will add  $0.1\,\mathrm{pt}$  between each letter.

This functionality *should not be used for lowercase text*, which is spacing correctly to begin with, but it can be very useful, in small amounts, when setting small caps or all caps titles. Also see the OpenType Uppercase option of the Letters feature (Section 9.2 on page 23).

## 11.3 Different font technologies : AAT and OpenType

 $X_{\Xi}T_{E}X$  supports two rendering technologies for typesetting, selected with the Renderer font feature. The first, AAT, is that provided (only) by Mac OS X itself. The second, OpenType, is an open source OpenType interpreter. <sup>15</sup> It provides greater support for OpenType features, notably contextual arrangement, over AAT.

In general, this feature will not need to be explicitly called: for OpenType fonts, the OpenType renderer is used automatically, and for AAT fonts, AAT is chosen by default. Some fonts, however, will contain font tables for *both* rendering technologies, such as the Hiragino Japanese fonts distributed with Mac OS X, and in these cases the choice may be required.

Among some other font features only available through a specific renderer, OpenType provides for the Script and Language features, which allow different font behaviour for different alphabets and languages; see Section 9.18 on page 34 for the description of these features. Because these font features can change which features are able to be selected for the font instance, they are selected by fontspec before all others and will automatically and without warning select the OpenType renderer.

#### 11.4 Optical font sizes

Multiple Master fonts are parameterised over orthogonal font axes, allowing continuous selection along such features as weight, width, and optical size (see ?? on page?? for further details). Whereas an OpenType font will have only a few separate optical sizes, a Multiple Master font's optical size can be specified over a continuous range. Unfortunately, this flexibility makes it harder to create an automatic interface through LETEX, and the optical size for a Multiple Master font must always be specified explicitly.

```
\fontspec{Minion MM Roman}[OpticalSize=11]
MM optical size test \\
```

<sup>15.</sup> v2.4: This was called 'ICU' in previous versions of XfTeX and fontspec. Backwards compatibility is preserved.

```
\fontspec{Minion MM Roman}[OpticalSize=47]
MM optical size test \\
\fontspec{Minion MM Roman}[OpticalSize=71]
MM optical size test \\
```

## 12 Mac OS X's AAT fonts

**Warning!**  $X \exists T \exists X'$  implementation on Mac OS X is currently in a state of flux and the information contained below may well be wrong from 2013 onwards. There is a good chance that the features described in this section will not be available any more as  $X \exists T \exists X'$  completes its transition to a cross-platform—only application.

Mac OS X's font technology began life before the ubiquitous-OpenType era and revolved around the Apple-invented 'AAT' font format. This format had some advantages (and other disadvantages) but it never became widely popular in the font world.

Nonetheless, this is the font format that was first supported by  $X_{\Xi}T_{E}X$  (due to its pedigree on Mac OS X in the first place) and was the first font format supported by fontspec. A number of fonts distributed with Mac OS X are still in the AAT format, such as 'Skia'.

## 12.1 Ligatures

Ligatures refer to the replacement of two separate characters with a specially drawn glyph for functional or æsthetic reasons. For AAT fonts, you may choose from any combination of Required, Common, Rare (or Discretionary), Logos, Rebus, Diphthong, Squared, AbbrevSquared, and Icelandic.

Some other Apple AAT fonts have those 'Rare' ligatures contained in the Icelandic feature. Notice also that the old TeX trick of splitting up a ligature with an empty brace pair does not work in XaTeX; you must use a 0 pt kern or \hbox (e.g., \null) to split the characters up if you do not want a ligature to be performed (the usual examples for when this might be desired are words like 'shelffull').

#### 12.2 Letters

The Letters feature specifies how the letters in the current font will look. For AAT fonts, you may choose from Normal, Uppercase, Lowercase, SmallCaps, and InitialCaps.

#### 12.3 Numbers

The Numbers feature defines how numbers will look in the selected font. For AAT fonts, they may be a combination of Lining or OldStyle and Proportional or Monospaced (the latter is good for tabular material). The synonyms Uppercase and Lowercase are equivalent to Lining and OldStyle, respectively. The differences have been shown previously in Section 6.3 on page 15.

#### 12.4 Contextuals

This feature refers to glyph substitution that vary by their position; things like contextual swashes are implemented here. The options for AAT fonts are WordInitial, WordFinal (Example 43), LineInitial, LineFinal, and Inner (Example 44, also called 'non-final' sometimes). As non-exclusive selectors, like the ligatures, you can turn them off by prefixing their name with No.

Example 43: Contextual glyph for the beginnings and ends of words.

[Contextuals=WordInitial, WordFinal] where is all the vegenite

\newfontface\fancy{Hoefler Text Italic}
 [Contextuals={WordInitial,WordFinal}]
\fancy where is all the vegemite

 $\label{eq:example 44} \mbox{Example 44}: A contextual feature for the 'long s' can be convenient as the character does not need to be marked up explicitly.$ 

(T. ) (C. )	\fontspec{Hoefler Text}[Contextuals=Inner]
'Inner' fwashes can sometimes	`Inner' swashes can \emph{sometimes} \\
contain the archaic long s.	contain the archaic long <sup>*</sup> s.

## 12.5 Vertical position

The VerticalPosition feature is used to access things like subscript (Inferior) and superscript (Superior) numbers and letters (and a small amount of punctuation, sometimes). The Ordinal option is (supposed to be) contextually sensitive to only raise characters that appear directly after a number. These are shown in Example 45.

The realscripts package (also loaded by xltxtra) redefines the \textsubscript and \textsuperscript commands to use the above font features, including for use in footnote labels.

#### 12.6 Fractions

Many fonts come with the capability to typeset various forms of fractional material. This is accessed in fontspec with the Fractions feature, which may be turned On or Off in both AAT and OpenType fonts.

In AAT fonts, the 'fraction slash' or solidus character, is to be used to create fractions. When Fractions are turned 0n, then only pre-drawn fractions will be used. See Example 46.

Using the Diagonal option (AAT only), the font will attempt to create the fraction from superscript and subscript characters.

Some (Asian fonts predominantly) also provide for the Alternate feature shown in Example 47.

Example 45 : Vertical position for AAT fonts.

\[
\begin{array}{lll} \fontspec{Skia} \\
\text{Normal} \\
\text{fontspec}{Skia}[\text{VerticalPosition=Superior}] \\
\text{Superior} \\
\text{fontspec}{Skia}[\text{VerticalPosition=Inferior}] \\
\text{Normal} \text{superior} \\
\text{Normal} \text{superior} \\
\text{Normal} \text{superior} \\
\text{fontspec}{Skia}[\text{VerticalPosition=Ordinal}] \\
\text{1st 2nd 3rd 4th 0th 8abcde}
\end{array}

Example 47: Alternate design of pre-composed fractions.

#### 12.7 Variants

The Variant feature takes a single numerical input for choosing different alphabetic shapes. Don't mind my fancy Example 48:) I'm just looping through the nine (!) variants of Zapfino.

See Section 13 on page 44 for a way to assign names to variants, which should be done on a per-font basis.

#### 12.8 Alternates

Selection of Alternates *again* must be done numerically; see Example 49. See Section 13 on page 44 for a way to assign names to alternates, which should be done on a per-font basis.

Example 48: Nine variants of Zapfino.

\newcounter{var}
\whiledo{\value{var}<9}{%
 \edef\1{%
 \noexpand\fontspec[Variant=\thevar,
 Color=0099\thevar\thevar]{Zapfino}}\1%
 \makebox[0.75\width]{d}%
 \stepcounter{var}}
\hspace\*{2cm}</pre>

Example 49: Alternate shape selection must be numerical.

Sphinx Of Black Quartz, Judge Mr Vow Sphinx Of Black Quartz, Judge Mr Vow \fontspec{Hoefler Text Italic}[Alternate=0]
Sphinx Of Black Quartz, {\scshape Judge My Vow} \\
\fontspec{Hoefler Text Italic}[Alternate=1]
Sphinx Of Black Quartz, {\scshape Judge My Vow}

Example 50: Vertical typesetting.

#### 共産主義者は

共産主義者

\fontspec{Hiragino Mincho Pro} \verttext

\fontspec{Hiragino Mincho Pro}[Renderer=AAT,Vertical=RotatedGlyphs] \rotatebox{-90}{\verttext}% requires the graphicx package

## **12.9** Style

The options of the Style feature are defined in AAT as one of the following: Display, Engraved, IlluminatedCaps, Italic, Ruby, <sup>16</sup> TallCaps, or TitlingCaps.

Typical examples for these features are shown in Section 9.10.

## **12.10 CJK** shape

There have been many standards for how CJK ideographic glyphs are 'supposed' to look. Some fonts will contain many alternate glyphs in order to be able to display these gylphs correctly in whichever form is appropriate. Both AAT and OpenType fonts support the following CJKShape options: Traditional, Simplified, JIS1978, JIS1983, JIS1990, and Expert. OpenType also supports the NLC option.

## 12.11 Character width

See Section 9.16 on page 33 for relevant examples; the features are the same between OpenType and AAT fonts. AAT also allows CharacterWidth=Default to return to the original font settings.

## 12.12 Vertical typesetting

TODO: improve!

X $\exists T \in X$  provides for vertical typesetting simply with the ability to rotate the individual glyphs as a font is used for typesetting, as shown in Example 50.

No actual provision is made for typesetting top-to-bottom languages; for an example of how to do this, see the vertical Chinese example provided in the  $X_{\overline{1}}T_{\overline{1}}X$  documentation.

 $<sup>16. \ &#</sup>x27;Ruby' \ refers \ to \ a \ small \ optical \ size, \ used \ in \ Japanese \ typography \ for \ annotations.$ 

This is Xe,TeX by Jonathan Kew.

\newAATfeature{Alternate}{HoeflerSwash}{17}{1}
\fontspec{Hoefler Text Italic}[Alternate=HoeflerSwash]
This is XeTeX by Jonathan Kew.

#### 12.13 Diacritics

Diacritics are marks, such as the acute accent or the tilde, applied to letters; they usually indicate a change in pronunciation. In Arabic scripts, diacritics are used to indicate vowels. You may either choose to Show, Hide or Decompose them in AAT fonts. The Hide option is for scripts such as Arabic which may be displayed either with or without vowel markings. E.g., \fontspec[Diacritics=Hide]{...}

Some older fonts distributed with Mac OS X included '0/' etc. as shorthand for writing 'Ø' under the label of the Diacritics feature. If you come across such fonts, you'll want to turn this feature off (imagine typing hello/goodbye and getting 'helløgoodbye' instead!) by decomposing the two characters in the diacritic into the ones you actually want. I recommend using the proper LaTeX input conventions for obtaining such characters instead.

#### 12.14 Annotation

Various Asian fonts are equipped with a more extensive range of numbers and numerals in different forms. These are accessed through the Annotation feature with the following options: Off, Box, RoundedBox, Circle, BlackCircle, Parenthesis, Period, RomanNumerals, Diamond, BlackSquare, BlackRoundSquare, and DoubleCircle.

## Cinquième partie

# **Programming interface**

This is the beginning of some work to provide some hooks that use fontspec for various macro programming purposes.

## 13 Defining new features

This package cannot hope to contain every possible font feature. Three commands are provided for selecting font features that are not provided for out of the box. If you are using them a lot, chances are I've left something out, so please let me know.

New AAT features may be created with this command:

Use the XaTeX file AAT-info. tex to obtain the code numbers. See Example 51.

New OpenType features may be created with this command :

 $\new open type feature \{ \langle feature \rangle \} \{ \langle option \rangle \} \{ \langle feature \ tag \rangle \}$ 

The synonym \newICUfeature is deprecated.

Here's what it would look like in practise:

\newopentypefeature{Style}{NoLocalForms}{-locl}

\newAATfeature

\newopentypefeature

#### Example 52: Assigning new arbitary features.

sockdolager rubdown sockdolager rubdown

\newfontfeature{AvoidD}{Special=Avoid d-collisions}
\newfontfeature{NoAvoidD}{Special=!Avoid d-collisions}
\fontspec{Zapfino}[AvoidD, Variant=1]
 sockdolager rubdown \\

\fontspec{Zapfino}[NoAvoidD, Variant=1]
sockdolager rubdown

Example 53: Using raw font features directly.

\fontspec{texgyrepagella-regular.otf}[RawFeature=+smcp]

PAGELLA SMALL CAPS

Pagella small caps

\newfontfeature

In case the above commands do not accommodate the desired font feature (perhaps a new XqTeX feature that fontspec hasn't been updated to support), a command is provided to pass arbitrary input into the font selection string:

 $\newfontfeature{\langle name \rangle} {\langle input string \rangle}$ 

For example, Zapfino contains the feature 'Avoid d-collisions'. To access it with this package, you could do some like that shown in Example 52. (For some reason this feature doesn't appear to be working although fontspec is doing the right thing. To be investigated.)

The advantage to using the \newAATfeature and \newopentypefeature commands instead of \newfontfeature is that they check if the selected font actually contains the desired font feature at load time. By contrast, \newfontfeature will not give a warning for improper input.

## 14 Going behind fontspec's back

Expert users may wish not to use fontspec's feature handling at all, while still taking advantage of its LATEX font selection conveniences. The RawFeature font feature allows literal XATEX font feature selection when you happen to have the OpenType feature tag memorised.

Multiple features can either be included in a single declaration :

[RawFeature=+smcp;+onum]

or with multiple declarations:

[RawFeature=+smcp, RawFeature=+onum]

## 15 Renaming existing features & options

\aliasfontfeature

If you don't like the name of a particular font feature, it may be aliased to another with the \aliasfontfeature{ $\langle existing \; name \rangle$ } ( $\langle new \; name \rangle$ ) command, such as shown in Example 54.

Spaces in feature (and option names, see below) *are* allowed. (You may have noticed this already in the lists of OpenType scripts and languages).

\aliasfontfeatureoption

If you wish to change the name of a font feature option, it can be aliased to another

ontfeature{ItalicFeatures}{IF}
ec{Hoefler Text}[IF = {Alternate=1}] etters \itshape And Swash
<b>D1</b>

\aliasfontfeature{VerticalPosition}{Vert Pos}
\aliasfontfeatureoption{VerticalPosition}{ScientificInferior}{Sci Inf}
\fontspec{LinLibertine\_R.otf}[Vert Pos=Sci Inf]
Scientific Inferior: 12345

Scientific Inferior: 12345

with the command \aliasfontfeatureoption{ $\langle font \, feature \rangle$ }{ $\langle existing \, name \rangle$ }{ $\langle new \, name \rangle$ }, such as shown in Example 55.

This example demonstrates an important point: when aliasing the feature options, the *original* feature name must be used when declaring to which feature the option belongs.

Only feature options that exist as sets of fixed strings may be altered in this way. That is, Proportional can be aliased to Prop in the Letters feature, but 550099BB cannot be substituted for Purple in a Color specification. For this type of thing, the <text> newfontfeature command should be used to declare a new, e.g., PurpleColor feature:

\newfontfeature{PurpleColor}{color=550099BB}

Except that this example was written before support for named colours was implemented. But you get the idea.

## 16 Programming details

In some cases, it is useful to know what the  $\LaTeX$  font family of a specific fontspec font is. After a \fontspec-like command, this is stored inside the \l\_fontspec\_family\_tl macro. Otherwise,  $\LaTeX$  sown \f@family macro can be useful here, too. The raw TEX font that is defined is stored temporarily in \l\_fontspec\_font.

The following commands in expl3 syntax may be used for writing code that interfaces with fontspec-loaded fonts. All of the following conditionals also exist with T and F as well as TF suffixes.

```
\fontspec_if_fontspec_font :TF Test whether the currently selected font has been loaded by fontspec.
\fontspec_if_aat_feature :nnTF Test whether the currently selected font contains the AAT feature (#1,#2).
```

\fontspec\_if\_feature :nTF Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType feature #1. E.g. : \fontspec\_if\_feature:nTF {pnum} {True} {False}. Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

\fontspec\_if\_feature :nnnTF Test whether the currently selected font with raw OpenType script tag #1 and raw OpenType language tag #2 contains the raw OpenType feature tag #3. E.g.:\fontspec\_if\_feature:nTF {latn} {ROM} {pnu
Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

\fontspec\_if\_script :nTF

Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType script #1. E.g.: \fontspec\_if\_script:nTF {latn} {True} {False}. Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

\fontspec\_if\_language :nTF

Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType language tag #1. E.g.: \fontspec\_if\_language:nTF {ROM} {True} {False}. Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

\fontspec\_if\_language :nnTF

Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType language tag #2 in script #1. E.g.:\fontspec\_if\_language:nnTF {cyrl} {SRB} {True} {False}. Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

ontspec\_if\_current\_script :nTF

Test whether the currently loaded font is using the specified raw OpenType script tag #1.

tspec\_if\_current\_language :nTF

Test whether the currently loaded font is using the specified raw OpenType language tag #1.

\fontspec\_set\_family :Nnn #1 : LATEX family

#3: font name

Defines a new NFSS family from given  $\langle \textit{features} \rangle$  and  $\langle \textit{font} \rangle$ , and stores the family name in the variable  $\langle \textit{family} \rangle$ . This font family can then be selected with standard LaTeX commands \fontfamily{\( \textit{family} \)}\) selectfont. See the standard fontspec user commands for applications of this function.

\fontspec\_set\_fontface :NNnn

#1: primitive font #2: LATEX family #3: fontspec features #4: font name

Variant of the above in which the primitive TEX font command is stored in the variable  $\langle primitive\ font \rangle$ . If a family is loaded (with bold and italic shapes) the primitive font command will only select the regular face. This feature is designed for LaTeX programmers who need to perform subsequent font-related tests on the  $\langle primitive\ font \rangle$ .

## Sixième partie

# The patching/improvement of $\LaTeX$ 2 $\varepsilon$ and other packages

Derived originally from xltxtra, this package contains patches to various LATEX components and third-party packages to improve the default behaviour.

## 17 Inner emphasis

fixltx2e's method for checking for "inner" emphasis is a little fragile in X¬TEX, because font slant information might be missing from the font. Therefore, we use LATEX's NFSS information, which is more likely to be correct.

## 18 Unicode footnote symbols

By default LaTeX defines symbolic footnote characters in terms of commands that don't resolve well; better results can be achieved by using specific Unicode characters or proper LICRs with the xunicode package.

This problem is solved by defining \@fnsymbol in a similar manner to the fixltx2e package.

## 19 Verbatim

Many verbatim mechanisms assume the existence of a 'visible space' character that exists in the ASCII space slot of the typewriter font. This character is known in Unicode as  $U+2423:BOX\ OPEN$ , which looks like this: ' $_{u}$ '.

When a Unicode typewriter font is used, LaTeX no longer prints visible spaces for the verbatim\* environment and \verb\* command. This problem is fixed by using the correct Unicode glyph, and the following packages are patched to do the same: listings, fancyvrb, moreverb, and verbatim.

In the case that the typewriter font does not contain  $' \_'$ , the Latin Modern Mono font is used as a fallback.

## 20 Discretionary hyphenation: \-

LATEX defines the macro \- to insert discretionary hyphenation points. However, it is hard-coded in LATEX to use the hyphen - character. Since fontspec makes it easy to change the hyphenation character on a per font basis, it would be nice if \- adjusted automatically — and now it does.

## 21 Commands for old-style and lining numbers

\oldstylenums \liningnums Lagrange font encodings. We provide a fontspec-compatible alternative and while we're at it also throw in the reverse option as well. Use  $\oldsystylenums\{\langle text \rangle\}$  to explicitly use old-style (or lowercase) numbers in  $\langle text \rangle$ , and the reverse for  $\oldsystylenums\{\langle text \rangle\}$ .

## Septième partie

# fontspec.sty and friends

Herein lie the implementation details of this package. Welcome! It was my first.

## 22 'Header' code

We will eventually load the correct version of the code according to which engine we're running. As we'll see later, there are some minor differences between what we have to do in XTLATEX and LualATEX.

The expl3 module is fontspec.

```
1 \( \text{@@=fontspec} \)
2 \( \*\fontspec&!\text{xetexx&!luatex} \)
But for now, this is the shared code.
3 \( \RequirePackage \{ \exp13 \} [2015/06/26] \)
4 \( \RequirePackage \{ \expanse \} \)
5 \( \Exp1 \)SyntaxOn
```

Quick fix for lualatex-math:

```
6 \cs_if_exist :NF \lua_now_x :n
7 { \cs_set_eq :NN \lua_now_x :n \directlua }
```

Check engine and load specific modules. For Lua $T_E\!X$ , load only luaotfload which loads luatexbase and lualibs too.

```
8\msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {cannot-use-pdftex}
9 {
10 The fontspec package requires either XeTeX or LuaTeX to function.
12 You must change your typesetting engine to,
   e.g., "xelatex" or "lualatex" \\
   instead of plain "latex" or "pdflatex".
15 }
16\xetex_if_engine :F
17 {
   \luatex_if_engine :TF
19
20
     \RequirePackage{luaotfload}[2013/05/20]
21
    \directlua{require("fontspec")}
22
23
24
     \msg_fatal :nn {fontspec} {cannot-use-pdftex}
26 }
```

## 22.1 expl3 tools

## 22.2 Bits and pieces

**Conditionals** 

**firsttime** As \keys\_set:nn is run multiple times, some of its information storing only occurs once while we decide if the font family has been defined or not. When the later processing is occuring per-shape this no longer needs to happen; this is indicated by the 'firsttime' conditional (initialised true).

27\bool\_new :N \l\_@@\_firsttime\_bool

```
28 \bool_new :N \l_@@_nobf_bool
                            29 \bool_new :N \l_@@_noit_bool
                            30 \bool_new :N \l_@@_nosc_bool
                            31 \bool_new :N \l_@@_tfm_bool
                            32\bool_new :N \l_@@_atsui_bool
                            33 \bool_new :N \l_@@_ot_bool
                            34 \bool_new : N \1_@@_mm_bool
                            35\bool_new :N \l_@@_graphite_bool
                           For dealing with legacy maths
                            36\bool_new :N \g_@@_math_euler_bool
                            37\bool_new :N \g_@@_math_lucida_bool
                            38 \bool_new :N \g_@@_pkg_euler_loaded_bool
                           For package options :
                            39 \bool_new :N \g_@@_cfg_bool
                            40 \bool_new :N \g_@@_math_bool
                           Counters
                            41 \int_new :N \l_fontspec_script_int
                            42 \int_new :N \l_fontspec_language_int
                            43 \int_new :N \l_fontspec_strnum_int
                           Other variables
                            44 \fp_new :N \l_@@_tmpa_fp
                            45 \fp_new :N \l_@@_tmpb_fp
                            46 \dim_new :N \l_@@_tmpa_dim
                            47 \dim_new :N \l_@@_tmpb_dim
                            48 \dim_new :N \l_@@_tmpc_dim
                            49 \tl_set :Nx \c_colon_str { \tl_to_str :N : }
                            50 \cs_set :Npn \use_v :nnnnn #1#2#3#4#5 {#5}
                            51 \cs_set :Npn \use_iv :nnnnn #1#2#3#4#5 {#4}
                               Need these:
                            52 \cs_generate_variant :Nn \str_if_eq :nnTF {nv}
                            53 \cs_generate_variant :Nn \int_set :Nn {Nv}
                            54\cs_generate_variant :Nn \keys_set :nn {nx}
                            55\cs_generate_variant :Nn \keys_set_known :nnN {nx}
                            56\cs_generate_variant :Nn \tl_if_empty :nTF {x}
                            57\cs_generate_variant :Nn \tl_if_empty :nTF {x}
                            58\cs_generate_variant :Nn \prop_put :Nnn {Nxx}
\@@_int_mult_truncate :Nn Missing in expl3, IMO.
                            59\cs_new :Nn \@@_int_mult_truncate :Nn
                                  \int_set :Nn #1 { \__dim_eval :w #2 #1 \__dim_eval_end : }
                            61
                              }
                            62
```

## 22.3 Error/warning/info messages

```
Shorthands for messages:
63 \cs_new :Npn \@@_error :n
                             { \msg_error :nn
                                                 {fontspec} }
64 \cs_new :Npn \@@_error :nx { \msg_error :nnx
                                                 {fontspec} }
65 \cs_new :Npn \@@_warning :n { \msg_warning :nn {fontspec} }
66 \cs_new :Npn \@@_warning :nx { \msg_warning :nnx {fontspec} }
67\cs_new :Npn \@@_warning :nxx { \msg_warning :nnxx {fontspec} }
68\cs_new :Npn \@@_info :n
                             { \msg_info :nn
                                                  {fontspec} }
                              { \msg_info :nnx
69 \cs_new :Npn \@@_info :nx
                                                  {fontspec} }
70 \cs_new :Npn \@@_info :nxx { \msg_info :nnxx
                                                  {fontspec} }
71 \cs_new :Npn \@@_trace :n
                             { \msg_trace :nn
                                                  {fontspec} }
   Errors:
72\msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {no-size-info}
   Size information must be supplied.\\
75 For example, SizeFeatures={Size={8-12},...}.
77 \msg_new :nnnn {fontspec} {font-not-found}
79 The font "#1" cannot be found.
80 }
81 {
82 A font might not be found for many reasons. \\
83 Check the spelling, where the font is installed etc. etc. \\\
When in doubt, ask someone for help!
85 }
86 \msg_new :nnnn {fontspec} {rename-feature-not-exist}
88 The feature #1 doesn't appear to be defined.
89 }
90 {
91 It looks like you're trying to rename a feature that doesn't exist.
93 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {no-glyph}
95 '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl' does not contain glyph #1.
96 }
97\msg_new :nnnn {fontspec} {euler-too-late}
99 The euler package must be loaded BEFORE fontspec.
100 }
102 fontspec only overwrites euler's attempt to
103 define the math text fonts if fontspec is
104 loaded after euler. Type <return to proceed
105 with incorrect \string\mathit, \string\mathbf, etc.
106 }
107 \msg_new :nnnn {fontspec} {no-xcolor}
109 Cannot load named colours without the xcolor package.
```

```
110 }
111 {
112 Sorry, I can't do anything to help. Instead of loading
113 the color package, use xcolor instead. It's better.
115 \msg_new :nnnn {fontspec} {unknown-color-model}
117 Error loading colour '#1'; unknown colour model.
118 }
119 {
120 Sorry, I can't do anything to help. Please report this error
121 to my developer with a minimal example that causes the problem.
122 }
Warnings:
123 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {addfontfeatures-ignored}
125 \string\addfontfeature (s) ignored;
126 it cannot be used with a font that wasn't selected by fontspec.
128 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {feature-option-overwrite}
130 Option '#2' of font feature '#1' overwritten.
132 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {script-not-exist-latn}
134 Font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl' does not contain script '#1'.\\
'Latin' script used instead.
136 }
137 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {script-not-exist}
138 {
139 Font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl' does not contain script '#1'.
140 }
141 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {aat-feature-not-exist}
'\l_keys_key_tl=\l_keys_value_tl' feature not supported
144 for AAT font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'.
145 }
146 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {aat-feature-not-exist-in-font}
148 AAT feature '\l_keys_key_tl=\l_keys_value_tl' (#1) not available
in font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'.
150 }
151 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {icu-feature-not-exist}
    '\l_keys_key_tl=\l_keys_value_tl' feature not supported
154 for OpenType font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'
155 }
156 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {icu-feature-not-exist-in-font}
158 OpenType feature '\l_keys_key_tl=\l_keys_value_tl' (#1) not available
159 for font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'
```

```
with script '\l_@@_script_name_tl' and language '\l_@@_lang_name_tl'.
162 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {no-opticals}
   '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'~ doesn't~ appear~ to~ have~ an~ Optical~ Size~ axis.
166 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {language-not-exist}
168 Language '#1' not available
169 for font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'
170 with script '\l_@@_script_name_tl'.\\
'Default' language used instead.
173 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {only-xetex-feature}
175 Ignored XeTeX only feature : '#1'.
176 }
177 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {only-luatex-feature}
179 Ignored LuaTeX only feature : '#1'.
180 }
181 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {no-mapping}
183 Input mapping not (yet?) supported in LuaTeX.
185 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {no-mapping-ligtex}
187 Input mapping not (yet?) supported in LuaTeX.\\
188 Use "Ligatures=TeX" instead of "Mapping=tex-text".
189 }
190 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {cm-default-obsolete}
192 The "cm-default" package option is obsolete.
193 }
194 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {fakebold-only-xetex}
196 The "FakeBold" and "AutoFakeBold" options are only available with XeLaTeX.\\
197 Option ignored.
198 }
Info messages:
199 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {defining-font}
201 Font family '\l_fontspec_family_tl' created for font '#2'
202 with options [\l_@@_all_features_clist].\\
204 This font family consists of the following shapes:
205 \l_fontspec_defined_shapes_tl
206 }
207 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {no-font-shape}
208 {
209 Could not resolv font #1 (it probably doesn't exist).
```

```
210 }
211 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {set-scale}
   \l_fontspec_fontname_tl\space scale ~=~ \l_@@_scale_tl.
215 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {setup-math}
216 {
217 Adjusting the maths setup (use [no-math] to avoid this).
218 }
219 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {no-scripts}
220 {
221 Font \l_fontspec_fontname_tl\space does not contain any OpenType 'Script' information.
222 }
223 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {opa-twice}
225 Opacity set twice, in both Colour and Opacity.
226 Using specification "Opacity=#1".
227 }
228 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {opa-twice-col}
230 Opacity set twice, in both Opacity and Colour.
231 Using an opacity specification in hex of "#1/FF".
232 }
233 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {bad-colour}
235 Bad colour declaration "#1".
236 Colour must be one of :\\
237 * a named xcolor colour
238 * a six-digit hex colour RRGGBB\\
239 * an eight-digit hex colour RRGGBBTT with opacity
240 }
```

## 22.4 Option processing

```
241 \DeclareOption{cm-default}
242 { \@@_warning :n {cm-default-obsolete} }
243 \DeclareOption{math}{\bool_set_true :N \g_@@_math_bool}
244 \DeclareOption{no-math}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}
245 \DeclareOption{config}{\bool_set_true :N \g_@@_cfg_bool}
246 \DeclareOption{no-config}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_cfg_bool}
247 \DeclareOption{quiet}
249 \msg_redirect_module :nnn { fontspec } { warning } { info }
250 \msg_redirect_module :nnn { fontspec } { info } { none }
251 }
252 \DeclareOption{silent}
    \msg_redirect_module :nnn { fontspec } { warning } { none }
255 \msg_redirect_module :nnn { fontspec } { info } { none }
256 }
257 \ExecuteOptions{config,math}
258 \ProcessOptions*
```

## 22.5 Packages

New for LuaTeX, we load a new package called 'fontspec-patches' designed to incorporate the hidden but useful parts of the old xltxtra package.

```
259 \RequirePackage{fontspec-patches}
260 \luatex_if_engine :T { \RequirePackage{fontspec-luatex} \endinput }
261 \xetex_if_engine :T { \RequirePackage{fontspec-xetex} \endinput }
262 \langle fontspec&!xetexx&!luatex \rangle
```

## 23 The main package code

That was the driver, and now the fun starts.

## 23.1 Encodings

Frank Mittelbach has recommended using the 'EUx' family of font encodings to experiment with Unicode. Now that  $X_{\overline{1}}T_{\overline{1}}X$  can find fonts in the texmf tree, the Latin Modern OpenType fonts can be used as the defaults. See the euenc collection of files for how this is implemented.

```
265 (xetexx)\tl_set :Nn \g_fontspec_encoding_tl {EU1}
266 (luatex)\tl_set :Nn \g_fontspec_encoding_tl {EU2}
267 \tl_set :Nn \rmdefault {lmr}
268 \tl_set :Nn \sfdefault {lmss}
269 \tl_set :Nn \ttdefault {lmtt}
270 \RequirePackage[\g_fontspec_encoding_tl]{fontenc}
271 \t = 1.00 NN \UTFencname \g_fontspec_encoding_tl % for xunicode
Dealing with a couple of the problems introduced by babel:
272 \tl_set_eq :NN \cyrillicencoding \g_fontspec_encoding_tl
273 \tl_set_eq :NN \latinencoding
                                    \g_fontspec_encoding_tl
274 \AtBeginDocument
    \tl_set_eq :NN \cyrillicencoding \g_fontspec_encoding_tl
277 \tl_set_eq :NN \latinencoding
                                    \g_fontspec_encoding_tl
278 }
```

That latin encoding definition is repeated to suppress font warnings. Something to do with \select@language ending up in the .aux file which is read at the beginning of the document.

**xunicode** Now we load xunicode, working around its internal X¬TEX check when under LuaTEX.

```
279 \( \text{xetexx} \\ \text{RequirePackage{xunicode}} \)
280 \( \text{*luatex} \)
281 \\ \text{cs_set_eq} : \text{NN \fontspec_tmp} : \text{XeTeXpicfile} \)
282 \\ \text{cs_set} : \text{Npn \XeTeXpicfile} \{ \}
283 \\ \text{RequirePackage{xunicode}} \)
284 \\ \text{cs_set_eq} : \text{NN \XeTeXpicfile \fontspec_tmp} : \)
285 \( \lambda \left| \text{Iuatex} \right)
```

#### 23.2 User commands

This section contains the definitions of the commands detailed in the user documentation. Only the 'top level' definitions of the commands are contained herein; they all use or define macros which are defined or used later on in Section 23.5 on page 68.

#### 23.2.1 Helper macros for argument mangling

```
286 \cs_new :Nn \@@_pass_args :nnn
287 {
288 \IfNoValueTF {#2}
    { \@@_post_arg :w {#1} {#3} }
   { #1 {#2} {#3} }
290
291 }
292 \NewDocumentCommand \@@_post_arg :w { m m O{} }
293 { #1 {#3} {#2} }
```

#### 23.2.2 Font selection

\fontspec

This is the main command of the package that selects fonts with various features. It takes two arguments: the font name and the optional requested features of that font. Then this new font family is selected.

```
294 \NewDocumentCommand \fontspec { o m }
295 { \@@_pass_args :nnn \@@_fontspec :nn {#1} {#2} }
297 \cs_new : Nn \@@_fontspec : nn
298 {
299
    \fontencoding {\g_fontspec_encoding_tl}
   \fontspec_set_family :Nnn \f@family {#1}{#2}
300
301 \selectfont
302 \ignorespaces
303 }
```

\setsansfont \setmonofont

\setmainfont The following three macros perform equivalent operations setting the default font for a particular family: 'roman', sans serif, or typewriter (monospaced). I end them with \normalfont so that if they're used in the document, the change registers immediately.

```
304 \DeclareDocumentCommand \setmainfont { o m }
305 { \@@_pass_args :nnn \@@_setmainfont :nn {#1} {#2} }
306
307 \cs_new : Nn \@@_setmainfont :nn
308 {
                        \fontspec_set_family :Nnn \rmdefault {#1}{#2}
                         \normalfont
                      \ignorespaces
312 }
314 \DeclareDocumentCommand \setsansfont { o m }
315 { \ensuremath{\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$0$}}}\ensuremath{\mbox{\mbox{$0$}}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}}\ensuremath{\mbox
316
317 \cs_new : Nn \@@_setsansfont :nn
318 {
                        \fontspec_set_family :Nnn \sfdefault {#1}{#2}
                   \normalfont
```

```
321 \ignorespaces
                 322 }
                 324 \DeclareDocumentCommand \setmonofont { o m }
                 325 { \ensuremath{\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$0$}}}} args :nnn \ensuremath{\mbox{\mbox{$0$}}} estmonofont :nn {#1} {#2} }
                 327\cs_new :Nn \@@_setmonofont :nn
                 328 {
                     \fontspec_set_family :Nnn \ttdefault {#1}{#2}
                 329
                 330 \normalfont
                 331 \ignorespaces
                 332 }
 \setromanfont This is the old name for \setmainfont, retained for backwards compatibility.
                 333 \cs_set_eq :NN \setromanfont \setmainfont
    \setmathrm These commands are analogous to \setmainfont and others, but for selecting the font used
    \setmathsf for \mathrm, etc. They can only be used in the preamble of the document. \setboldmathrm
\setboldmathrm is used for specifying which fonts should be used in \boldmath.
    \setmathtt
                334 \tl_new : N \g_@@_mathrm_tl
                 335 \tl_new : N \g_@@_bfmathrm_tl
                 336 \tl_new :N \g_@@_mathsf_tl
                 337 \tl_new : N \g_@@_mathtt_tl
                 338 \DeclareDocumentCommand \setmathrm { o m }
                 339 { \@@_pass_args :nnn \@@_setmathrm :nn {#1} {#2} }
                 341 \cs_new : Nn \equiv = setmathrm : nn
                     \fontspec_set_family :Nnn \g_@@_mathrm_tl {#1} {#2}
                 344 }
                 345
                 346 \DeclareDocumentCommand \setboldmathrm { o m }
                 347 { \@@_pass_args :nnn \@@_setboldmathrm :nn {#1} {#2} }
                 348
                 349 \cs_new :Nn \@@_setboldmathrm :nn
                 350 {
                 351 \fontspec_set_family :Nnn \g_@@_bfmathrm_tl {#1} {#2}
                 352 }
                 354 \DeclareDocumentCommand \setmathsf { o m }
                 355 { \@@_pass_args :nnn \@@_setmathsf :nn {#1} {#2} }
                 356
                 357 \cs_new :Nn \@@_setmathsf :nn
                     \fontspec_set_family :Nnn \g_@@_mathsf_tl {#1} {#2}
                 360 }
                 362 \DeclareDocumentCommand \setmathtt { o m }
                 363 { \@@_pass_args :nnn \@@_setmathtt :nn {#1} {#2} }
                 365 \cs_new : Nn \@@_setmathtt :nn
                 366 {
```

```
367 \fontspec_set_family :Nnn \g_@@_mathtt_tl {#1} {#2}
368 }
369 \@onlypreamble\setmathrm
370 \@onlypreamble\setmathsf
372 \@onlypreamble\setmathtt

If the commands above are not executed, then \rmdefault (etc.) will be used.
373 \tl_set :Nn \g_@@_mathrm_tl {\rmdefault}
374 \tl_set :Nn \g_@@_mathsf_tl {\sfdefault}
375 \tl_set :Nn \g_@@_mathtt_tl {\ttdefault}
```

\newfontfamily
\newfontface

This macro takes the arguments of \fontspec with a prepended  $\langle instance\ cmd \rangle$ . This command is used when a specific font instance needs to be referred to repetitively (e.g., in a section heading) since continuously calling \fontspec\_select:nn is inefficient because it must parse the option arguments every time.

```
376 \DeclareDocumentCommand \newfontfamily { m o m }
377 { \@@_pass_args :nnn { \@@_newfontfamily :Nnn #1 } {#2} {#3} }
378
379 \cs_new : Nn \@@_newfontfamily : Nnn
    \fontspec_set_family :cnn { g_@@_ \cs_to_str :N #1 _family } {#2} {#3}
381
382
383
384
       \exp_not :N \DeclareRobustCommand \exp_not :N #1
385
386
         \exp_not :N \fontencoding {\g_fontspec_encoding_tl}
387
       \exp_not : N fontfamily { \use :c <math>\{g_0@_ \str : N \#1 _family \} \exp_not : N \selectfont \}
388
        }
389
390 }
```

\newfontface uses the fact that if the argument to BoldFont, etc., is empty (i.e., BoldFont= $\{\}$ ), then no bold font is searched for.

```
391 \DeclareDocumentCommand \newfontface { m o m }
392 { \@@_pass_args :nnn { \@@_newfontface :Nnn #1 } {#2} {#3} }
393
394 \cs_new :Nn \@@_newfontface :Nnn
395 {
396 \newfontfamily #1 [ BoldFont={},ItalicFont={},SmallCapsFont={},#2 ] {#3}
397 }
```

## 23.2.3 Font feature selection

\defaultfontfeatures

This macro takes one argument that consists of all of feature options that will be applied by default to all subsequent \fontspec, et al., commands. It stores its value in \g\_fontspec\_default\_fontopts\_tl (initialised empty), which is concatenated with the individual macro choices in the [...] macro.

```
398\clist_new :N \g_@@_default_fontopts_clist
399\prop_new :N \g_@@_fontopts_prop
```

```
400 \DeclareDocumentCommand \defaultfontfeatures { t+ o m }
401 {
402
    \IfNoValueTF {#2}
403
     { \@@_set_default_features :nn {#1} {#3} }
     { \@@_set_font_default_features :nnn {#1} {#2} {#3} }
    \ignorespaces
407 \cs_new :Nn \@@_set_default_features :nn
408 {
    \IfBooleanTF {#1} \clist_put_right :Nn \clist_set :Nn
     \g_0e_default_fontopts_clist {#2}
410
411 }
```

The optional argument specifies a font identifier. Branch for either (a) single token input such as \rmdefault, or (b) otherwise assume its a fontname. In that case, strip spaces and file extensions and lower-case to ensure consistency.

```
412 \cs_new : Nn \@@_set_font_default_features :nnn
413 {
                  \clist_map_inline :nn {#2}
414
415
                          \tl_if_single :nTF {##1}
416
                          { \tilde s} = 1.0 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \ 1.00 \
417
418
                             { \@@_sanitise_fontname : Nn \l_@@_tmp_tl {##1} }
419
420
                          \IfBooleanTF {#1}
421
                                  423
                                     { \tl_clear :N \l_@@_tmpb_tl }
                                  \tl_put_right :Nn \l_@@_tmpb_tl {#3,}
424
                                  425
426
427
428
                                 \tl_if_empty :nTF {#3}
429
                                     { \prop_gremove :NV \g_@@_fontopts_prop \l_@@_tmp_tl }
                                      { \prop_put : NVn \ \g_@e_fontopts_prop \l_@e_tmp_tl {#3,} }
430
431
                              }
432
                      }
433 }
```

\@@\_sanitise\_fontname : Nn Assigns font name #2 to token list variable #1 and strips extension(s) from it in the case of an external font. We strip spaces for luatex for consistency with luaotfload, although I'm not sure this is necessary any more. At one stage this also lowercased the name, but this step has been removed unless someone can remind me why it was necessary.

```
434 \cs_new : Nn \@@_sanitise_fontname : Nn
435 {
436 \tl_set :Nx #1 {#2}
437 (luatex) \tl_remove_all :Nn #1 {~}
    \clist_map_inline : Nn \l_@@_extensions_clist
439
     { \tl_remove_once :Nn #1 {##1} }
440 }
```

\addfontfeatures

In order to be able to extend the feature selection of a given font, two things need to be known: the currently selected features, and the currently selected font. Every time a font family is created, this information is saved inside a control sequence with the name of the font family itself.

This macro extracts this information, then appends the requested font features to add to the already existing ones, and calls the font again with the top level \fontspec command.

The default options are *not* applied (which is why  $\g_fontspec_default_fontopts_t1$  is emptied inside the group; this is allowed as  $\l_fontspec_family_t1$  is globally defined in  $\f_fontspec_select:nn$ ), so this means that the only added features to the font are strictly those specified by this command.

\addfontfeature is defined as an alias, as I found that I often typed this instead when adding only a single font feature.

```
441\bool_new :N \l_@@_disable_defaults_bool
442 \DeclareDocumentCommand \addfontfeatures {m}
443 {
444
    \fontspec_if_fontspec_font :TF
445
     {
446
      \group_begin :
         447
448
         \label{lem:converse_general} $$ \operatorname{cnN} \{g_0_ \fofamily \_prop} \{fontname\} \l_0_fontname_tl \end{substitute} $$
         \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_disable_defaults_bool
449
         \use :x
450
451
         {
452
           \exp_not :N \fontspec_select :nn
453
             { \l_@@_options_tl , #1 } {\l_@@_fontname_tl}
454
455
      \group_end :
      \fontfamily\l_fontspec_family_tl\selectfont
456
457
458
       \@@_warning :n {addfontfeatures-ignored}
459
460
    \ignorespaces
461
463 \cs_set_eq :NN \addfontfeature \addfontfeatures
```

#### 23.2.4 Defining new font features

\newfontfeature

\newfontfeature takes two arguments: the name of the feature tag by which to reference it, and the string that is used to select the font feature.

\newAATfeature

This command assigns a new AAT feature by its code (#2,#3) to a new name (#1). Better than \newfontfeature because it checks if the feature exists in the font it's being used for.

```
474 \DeclareDocumentCommand \newAATfeature {mmmm}
                         476
                              \keys_if_exist :nnF { fontspec } {#1}
                         477
                                { \@@_define_font_feature :n {#1} }
                              \keys_if_choice_exist :nnnT {fontspec} {#1} {#2}
                                { \@@_warning :nxx {feature-option-overwrite} {#1} {#2} }
                         480
                              \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn {#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{}
                         481 }
    \newopentypefeature
                         This command assigns a new OpenType feature by its abbreviation (#2) to a new name (#1).
         \newICUfeature
                         Better than \newfontfeature because it checks if the feature exists in the font it's being used
                         482 \DeclareDocumentCommand \newopentypefeature {mmm}
                         483 {
                         484
                              \keys_if_exist :nnF { fontspec / options } {#1}
                         485
                                { \@@_define_font_feature :n {#1} }
                              \keys_if_choice_exist :nnnT {fontspec} {#1} {#2}
                                { \@@_warning :nxx {feature-option-overwrite} {#1} {#2} }
                         487
                              488
                         489 }
                         490 \cs_set_eq :NN \newICUfeature \newopentypefeature % deprecated
      \aliasfontfeature
                         User commands for renaming font features and font feature options.
\aliasfontfeatureoption
                         491 \bool_new :N \l_@@_alias_bool
                         492 \DeclareDocumentCommand \aliasfontfeature {mm}
                         493 {
                              \bool_set_false :N \l_@@_alias_bool
                         494
                         495
                              \clist_map_inline :nn
                               { fontspec, fontspec-preparse, fontspec-preparse-external,
                         497
                                 fontspec-preparse-nested, fontspec-renderer }
                         498
                         499
                         500
                                 \keys_if_exist :nnT {##1} {#1}
                         501
                         502
                         503
                                    \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_alias_bool
                         504
                                    \@@_alias_font_feature :nnn {##1} {#1} {#2}
                         505
                         507
                              \bool_if :NF \l_@@_alias_bool
                         508
                                { \@@_warning :nx {rename-feature-not-exist} {#1} }
                         509
                         510 }
                         512 \cs_set :Nn \@@_alias_font_feature :nnn
                         514
                                \keys_define :nn {#1}
                         515
                                  \{ \#3 .code :n = \{ \keys\_set :nn \{\#1\} \{ \#2 = \{\#\#1\} \} \} \} \}
                         516
                         518 \DeclareDocumentCommand \aliasfontfeatureoption {mmm}
                         519 { \keys_define :nn { fontspec / #1 } { #3 .meta :n = {#2} } }
```

\newfontscript Mostly used internally, but also possibly useful for users, to define new OpenType 'scripts', mapping logical names to OpenType script tags. Iterates though the scripts in the selected font to check that it's a valid feature choice, and then prepends the (X\mathrm{T}EX) \font feature string with the appropriate script selection tag.

```
520 \DeclareDocumentCommand \newfontscript {mm}
    \fontspec_new_script :nn {#1} {#2}
    \fontspec_new_script :nn {#2} {#2}
524 }
525 \keys_define :nn { fontspec } { Script .choice : }
526 \cs_new : Nn \fontspec_new_script :nn
527 {
     \keys_define :nn { fontspec } { Script / #1 .code :n =
528
529
      \fontspec_check_script :nTF {#2}
530
         \tl_set :Nn \l_fontspec_script_tl {#2}
531
         \int_set :Nn \l_fontspec_script_int {\l_fontspec_strnum_int}
         \fontspec_check_script :nTF {latn}
536
           \@@_warning :nx {script-not-exist-latn} {#1}
538
           \keys_set :nn {fontspec} {Script=Latin}
540
           \@@_warning :nx {script-not-exist} {#1}
541
543
544
545 }
```

\newfontlanguage

Mostly used internally, but also possibly useful for users, to define new OpenType 'languages', mapping logical names to OpenType language tags. Iterates though the languages in the selected font to check that it's a valid feature choice, and then prepends the  $(X_{\overline{4}}T_{\overline{6}}X)$  \font feature string with the appropriate language selection tag.

```
546 \DeclareDocumentCommand \newfontlanguage {mm}
547 {
    \fontspec_new_lang :nn {#1} {#2}
549
    \fontspec_new_lang :nn {#2} {#2}
550 }
551 \keys_define :nn { fontspec } { Language .choice : }
552 \cs_new :Nn \fontspec_new_lang :nn
553 {
    \keys_define :nn { fontspec } { Language / #1 .code :n =
554
      \fontspec_check_lang :nTF {#2}
556
         \tl_set :Nn \l_fontspec_lang_tl {#2}
        \int_set :Nn \l_fontspec_language_int {\l_fontspec_strnum_int}
560
561
         \@@_warning :nx {language-not-exist} {#1}
```

## 23.3 Programmer's interface

These functions are not used directly by fontspec when defining fonts; they are designed to be used by other packages who wish to do font-related things on top of fontspec itself.

Because I haven't fully explored how these functions will behave in practise, I am not giving them user-level names. As it becomes more clear which of these should be accessible by document writers, I'll open them up a little more.

All functions are defined assuming that the font to be queried is currently selected as a fontspec font. (I.e., via \fontspec or from a \newfontfamily macro or from \setmainfont and so on.)

```
\fontspec_if_fontspec_font :TF
                                 Test whether the currently selected font has been loaded by fontspec.
                                 572\prg_new_conditional :Nnn \fontspec_if_fontspec_font : {TF,T,F}
                                      \cs_if_exist :cTF {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} \prg_return_true : \prg_return_false :
\fontspec_if_aat_feature :nnTF
                                 Conditional to test if the currently selected font contains the AAT feature (#1,#2).
                                 576 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \fontspec_if_aat_feature :nn {TF,T,F}
                                 578
                                      \fontspec_if_fontspec_font :TF
                                 579
                                         \prop_get : cnN {g_@@_ \f@family \_prop} {fontdef} \l_@@_fontdef_tl
                                 580
                                         \@@_font_set :Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\l_@@_fontdef_tl} {\f@size pt}
                                 581
                                         \bool_if :NTF \l_@@_atsui_bool
                                 582
                                 583
                                           \fontspec_make_AAT_feature_string :nnTF {#1}{#2}
                                 585
                                             \prg_return_true : \prg_return_false :
                                 586
                                 587
                                           \prg_return_false :
                                 589
                                          }
                                 590
                                 591
                                 592
                                        \prg_return_false :
                                       }
```

594 }

```
Test whether the currently selected font is an OpenType font. Always true for LuaTeX fonts.
  \fontspec_if_opentype :TF
                              595\prg_new_conditional :Nnn \fontspec_if_opentype : {TF,T,F}
                              596 {
                              597
                                   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font :TF
                              598
                                     \prop_get :cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {fontdef} \l_@@_fontdef_tl
                              599
                                     \@@_font_set :Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\l_@@_fontdef_tl} {\f@size pt}
                                     \@@_set_font_type :
                              601
                                     \bool_if :NTF \l_@@_ot_bool \prg_return_true : \prg_return_false :
                              602
                              603
                              604
                                     \prg_return_false :
                              606
                              607
                              Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType feature #1. E.g.:
  \fontspec_if_feature :nTF
                              \fontspec_if_feature:nTF {pnum} {True} {False} Returns false if the font is not loaded
                              by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.
                              608 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \fontspec_if_feature :n {TF,T,F}
                              609 {
                              610
                                   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font :TF
                              611
                                     prop_get : cnN \{g_@@_ \f@family \_prop\} \{fontdef\} \l_@@_fontdef_tl
                              612
                                     \@@_font_set :Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\l_@@_fontdef_tl} {\f@size pt}
                              613
                              614
                                     \@@_set_font_type :
                                     \bool_if :NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
                                       \prop_get : cnN {g_@@_ \f@family \_prop} {script-num} \l_@@_tmp_tl
                              617
                                       \int_set :Nn \l_fontspec_script_int {\l_@@_tmp_tl}
                                       \prop_get : cnN {g_@@_ \f@family \_prop} {lang-num} \l_@@_tmp_tl
                                       \int_set :Nn \l_fontspec_language_int {\l_@@_tmp_tl}
                                      \prop_get :cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {script-tag} \l_fontspec_script_tl
                              624
                                       \prop_get :cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {lang-tag} \l_fontspec_lang_tl
                                      \fontspec_check_ot_feat :nTF {#1} {\prg_return_true :} {\prg_return_false :}
                                      {
                                       \prg_return_false :
                              630
                              631
                              632
                                     \prg_return_false :
                              634
                                    }
                              635 }
                              Test whether the currently selected font with raw Open-Type script tag #1 and raw Open-
\fontspec_if_feature :nnnTF
                              Type language tag #2 contains the raw OpenType feature tag #3. E.g.:\fontspec_if_feature:nTF {latn} {ROM} {pnu
                              Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.
```

636 \prg\_new\_conditional :Nnn \fontspec\_if\_feature :nnn {TF,T,F}

```
638
                                                                       \fontspec_if_fontspec_font :TF
                                                             640
                                                                            \ensuremath{\ensuremath{\texttt{00}\_font\_set}} \ \\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\texttt{00}\_font\_def\_tl}} \ \\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\texttt{10}\_ensuremath{\texttt{00}\_font\_def\_tl}}} \
                                                             642
                                                                            \@@_set_font_type :
                                                             643
                                                                           \bool_if :NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
                                                             644
                                                                                \fontspec_iv_str_to_num :Nn \l_fontspec_script_int {#1}
                                                             645
                                                                                \fontspec_iv_str_to_num :Nn \l_fontspec_language_int {#2}
                                                             646
                                                                               \fontspec_check_ot_feat :nTF {#3} \prg_return_true : \prg_return_false :
                                                             647
                                                             648
                                                             649
                                                                              { \prg_return_false : }
                                                             650
                                                             651
                                                                         { \prg_return_false : }
                                                             652 }
    \fontspec_if_script :nTF
                                                             Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType script #1. E.g.:
                                                             \fontspec_if_script:nTF {latn} {True} {False} Returns false if the font is not loaded
                                                             by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.
                                                             653 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \fontspec_if_script :n {TF,T,F}
                                                             654 {
                                                                       \fontspec_if_fontspec_font :TF
                                                             656
                                                                           657
                                                             658
                                                                           \ensuremath{\verb| (00_font_set :Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\l_00_fontdef_tl} {\footspec_pt}| }
                                                                           \@@_set_font_type :
                                                                            \bool_if :NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
                                                             661
                                                                                \fontspec_check_script :nTF {#1} \prg_return_true : \prg_return_false :
                                                             662
                                                             663
                                                                              { \prg_return_false : }
                                                             665
                                                                         { \prg_return_false : }
                                                             667 }
\fontspec_if_language :nTF
                                                             Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType language tag #1. E.g.:
                                                             \fontspec_if_language:nTF {ROM} {True} {False}. Returns false if the font is not loaded
                                                             by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.
                                                             668 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \fontspec_if_language :n {TF,T,F}
                                                             669 {
                                                             670
                                                                       \fontspec_if_fontspec_font :TF
                                                                            \label{lem:converse_general} $$ \operatorname{cnN} \{g_{0} \ f_{0} \ prop} \{f_{0} \ l_{0} - f_{1} \ l_{0} \ f_{1} \ l_{0} \ f_{0} \ l_{0} \ l_{0}
                                                                           \ensuremath{\verb| 00_font_set|:} Nnn \ensuremath{\verb| 1_60_font_set|:} \{\ensuremath{\verb| 1_60_font_set|:} \{\ensuremath{\verb| 1_60_font_set|:} \}
                                                                            \@@_set_font_type :
                                                             674
                                                                            \bool_if :NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
                                                             675
                                                             676
                                                                                \prop_get :cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {script-num} \l_@@_tmp_tl
                                                                                \int_set :Nn \l_fontspec_script_int {\l_@@_tmp_tl}
                                                             678
                                                                             \prop_get :cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {script-tag} \l_fontspec_script_tl
                                                             679
                                                             680
```

```
\prg_return_false : }
                                684
                                685
                                     { \prg_return_false : }
                                686 }
                                Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType language tag #2 in
   \fontspec_if_language :nnTF
                                script #1. E.g.:\fontspec_if_language:nnTF {cyrl} {SRB} {True} {False}. Returns false
                                if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.
                                687 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \fontspec_if_language :nn {TF,T,F}
                                688 {
                                    \fontspec_if_fontspec_font :TF
                                689
                                690
                                691
                                      \prop_get : cnN \{g_@@_ \f@family \_prop\} \{fontdef\} \l_@@_fontdef_tl
                                      \@@_font_set :Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\l_@@_fontdef_tl} {\f@size pt}
                                      \@@_set_font_type :
                                      \bool_if :NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
                                694
                                695
                                         \tl_set :Nn \l_fontspec_script_tl {#1}
                                696
                                         \fontspec_iv_str_to_num :Nn \l_fontspec_script_int {#1}
                                         \fontspec_check_lang :nTF {#2} \prg_return_true : \prg_return_false :
                                699
                                        { \prg_return_false : }
                                700
                                701
                                702
                                     { \prg_return_false : }
                                703 }
`ontspec_if_current_script :nTF
                               Test whether the currently loaded font is using the specified raw OpenType script tag #1.
                                704\prg_new_conditional :Nnn \fontspec_if_current_script :n {TF,T,F}
                                705 {
                                    \fontspec_if_fontspec_font :TF
                                706
                                     {
                                       \prop_get : cnN {g_@@_ \f@family \_prop} {fontdef} \l_@@_fontdef_tl
                                708
                                709
                                      \@@_font_set :Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\l_@@_fontdef_tl} {\f@size pt}
                                      \@@_set_font_type :
                                      \bool_if :NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
                                         \str_if_eq :nVTF {#1} \l_@@_tmp_tl
                                714
                                715
                                           {\prg_return_true :} {\prg_return_false :}
                                        { \prg_return_false : }
                                718
                                719
                                     { \prg_return_false : }
                                720 }
tspec_if_current_language :nTF
                                Test whether the currently loaded font is using the specified raw OpenType language tag
                                721 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \fontspec_if_current_language :n {TF,T,F}
                                   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font :TF
```

\fontspec\_check\_lang :nTF {#1} \prg\_return\_true : \prg\_return\_false :

```
724
                                         726
                                         \ensuremath{\verb| (00_font_set :Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\l_00_fontdef_tl} {\footspec_pt}| }
                                         \@@_set_font_type :
                                  728
                                         \bool_if :NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
                                            \label{lem:converse_loss} $$ \converse_{g_@Q_ \fGfamily \_prop} {lang-tag} \ \label{lem:converse} $$ \converse_{g_@Q_ \fGfamily \_prop} {lang-tag} \ \converse_{g_@Q_ \fGfamily \_prop} $$
                                  731
                                           \str_if_eq :nVTF {#1} \l_@@_tmp_tl
                                  732
                                              {\prg_return_true :} {\prg_return_false :}
                                  734
                                          { \prg_return_false : }
                                        }
                                  736
                                        { \prg_return_false : }
                                  737 }
   \fontspec_set_family :Nnn #1 : family
                                  #2 : fontspec features
                                  #3: font name
                                      Defines a new font family from given \langle features \rangle and \langle font \rangle, and stores the name in the
                                  variable \(\langle family \rangle \). See the standard fontspec user commands for applications of this function.
                                      We want to store the actual name of the font family within the \langle family \rangle variable because
                                  the actual LATEX family name is automatically generated by fontspec and it's easier to keep
                                  it that way.
                                      Please use \fontspec_set_family:Nnn instead of \fontspec_select:nn, which may
                                  change in the future.
                                  738 \cs_new :Nn \fontspec_set_family :Nnn
                                  739 {
                                  740 \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_family_label_tl { #1 }
                                  741 \fontspec_select :nn {#2}{#3}
                                  742 \tl_set_eq :NN #1 \l_fontspec_family_tl
                                  743 }
                                  744 \cs_generate_variant : Nn \fontspec_set_family : Nnn {c}
\fontspec_set_fontface :NNnn
                                  745 \cs_new :Nn \fontspec_set_fontface :NNnn
                                  746 {
                                  747 \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_family_label_tl { #1 }
                                  748 \fontspec_select :nn {#3}{#4}
                                  749 \tl_set_eq :NN #1 \l_fontspec_font
                                  750 \tl_set_eq :NN #2 \l_fontspec_family_tl
                                  751 }
                                  23.4 expl3 interface for font loading
                                  752 \cs_set :Nn \@@_fontwrap :n { "#1" }
```

753 \cs\_set :Npn \@@\_primitive\_font\_set :Nnn #1#2#3

758 \cs\_set :Npn \@@\_primitive\_font\_gset :Nnn #1#2#3

\font #1 = #2 ~at~ #3 \scan\_stop :

755

756

```
\ \fi = #2 at size #3 scan_stop :
                               760
                               761
                               762
                               763 \cs_set :Npn \@@_font_suppress_not_found_error :
                               765
                                      \int_set_eq :NN \xetex_suppressfontnotfounderror :D \c_one
                               766
                               768 \prg_set_conditional :Nnn \@@_font_if_null :N {p,TF,T,F}
                               769 {
                                     \ifx #1 \nullfont
                               770
                               771
                                       \prg_return_true :
                               772
                                     \else
                               773
                                       \prg_return_false :
                               774
                                      \fi
                               775 }
c_set :Nnn,\fontspec_gset :Nnn Wrapper around \font_set:Nnn and \font_gset:Nnn.
                               776 \cs_new : Nn \@@_font_set : Nnn
                               778 \@@_primitive_font_set :Nnn #1 { \@@_fontwrap :n {#2} } {#3}
                               779 }
                               780 \cs_new :Nn \@@_font_gset :Nnn
                               782 \@@_primitive_font_gset :Nnn #1 { \@@_fontwrap :n {#2} } {#3}
                               783 }
   \font_glyph_if_exist :NnTF
                               784\prg_new_conditional :Nnn \font_glyph_if_exist :Nn {p,TF,T,F}
                               785 {
                               786 \etex_iffontchar :D #1 #2 \scan_stop :
                               787
                                   \prg_return_true :
                               788 \else:
                               789
                                    \prg_return_false :
                               790 \fi :
                               791 }
```

759

## 23.5 Internal macros

The macros from here in are used internally by all those defined above. They are not designed to remain consistent between versions.

\fontspec\_select :nn

This is the command that defines font families for use, the underlying procedure of all \fontspec-like commands. Given a list of font features (#1) for a requested font (#2), it will define an NFSS family for that font and put the family name (globally) into \l\_fontspec\_family\_tl. The  $T_EX$  '\font' command is (globally) stored in \l\_fontspec\_font.

This macro does its processing inside a group to attempt to restrict the scope of its internal processing. This works to some degree to insulate the internal commands from having to be manually cleared.

Some often-used variables to know about:

— \l\_fontspec\_fontname\_tl is used as the generic name of the font being defined.

- \l\_@@\_fontid\_tl is the unique identifier of the font with all its features.
- \l\_fontspec\_fontname\_up\_tl is the font specifically to be used as the upright font.
- \1\_@@\_basename\_tl is the (immutable) original argument used for \*-replacing.
- \l\_fontspec\_font is the plain TEX font of the upright font requested.

```
792\cs_set :Nn \fontspec_select :nn
                                                                                793 {
                                                                                794 \group_begin :
                                                                                795 \@@_font_suppress_not_found_error :
                                                                                796 \@@_init :
                                                                                797
                                                                                798 \tl_set :Nx \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
                                                                                                                                                                                             {#2}
                                                                                799 \tl_set :Nx \l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl {#2}
                                                                                800 \tl_set :Nx \l_@@_basename_tl
                                                                                                                                                                                             {#2}
                                                                                801
                                                                                802 \@@_load_external_fontoptions : Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_tl {#2}
                                                                               803 \@@_extract_all_features :n {#1}
                                                                               804 \@@_preparse_features :
                                                                               805
                                                                                806 \@@_load_font :
                                                                                           \@@_set_scriptlang :
                                                                                807
                                                                                           \@@_get_features :Nn \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist {}
                                                                                808
                                                                                809
                                                                                           \bool_set_false :N \l_@@_firsttime_bool
                                                                                           \@@_save_family :nTF {#2}
                                                                                811
                                                                                812
                                                                                813
                                                                                                \@@_save_fontinfo :
                                                                                                \@@_find_autofonts :
                                                                                814
                                                                                                \DeclareFontFamily{\g_fontspec_encoding_tl}{\l_fontspec_family_tl}{}
                                                                                815
                                                                                                \@@_set_faces :
                                                                                816
                                                                                                \@@_info :nxx {defining-font} {#1} {#2}
                                                                                817
                                                                                818 (*debug)
                                                                                                \typeout{"\l_@@_fontid_tl" defined.}
                                                                                819
                                                                                                \@@_warning :nxx {defining-font} {#1} {#2}
                                                                                821 (/debug)
                                                                               822
                                                                                         }
                                                                               823
                                                                                824 (*debug)
                                                                                                \typeout{"\l_@@_fontid_tl" already defined apparently.}
                                                                                826 (/debug)
                                                                                827
                                                                                          \group_end :
                                                                                828
                                                                                829 }
load_external_fontoptions: Nn Load a possible fontspec font configuration file. This file could set font-specific options
                                                                                for the font about to be loaded.
                                                                                830 \cs_new : Nn \eqlipses : Nn \cs_new : Nn \cs_new : Nn \cd_new : 
                                                                                831 {
                                                                                832
                                                                                           \@@_sanitise_fontname :Nn #1 {#2}
                                                                                           \tl_set :Nx \l_@@_ext_filename_tl {#1.fontspec}
                                                                                           \tl_remove_all :Nn \l_@@_ext_filename_tl {~}
                                                                                835 \prop_if_in :NVF \g_@@_fontopts_prop #1
```

```
836
                                 \exp_args :No \file_if_exist :nT { \l_@@_ext_filename_tl }
                          837
                          838
                                  { \file_input :n { \l_@@_ext_filename_tl } }
                          839
                          840 }
 \@@_extract_features :
                          841 \cs_new : Nn \@@_extract_all_features :n
                          842 {
                               \bool_if :NTF \l_@@_disable_defaults_bool
                          843
                          844
                          845
                                 \clist_set :Nx \l_@@_all_features_clist {#1}
                          846
                                }
                          847
                                \prop_get :NVNF \g_@@_fontopts_prop \l_fontspec_fontname_tl \l_@@_fontopts_clist
                          848
                                  { \clist_clear :N \l_@@_fontopts_clist }
                          849
                          850
                          851
                                 \prop_get :NVNF \g_@@_fontopts_prop \l_@@_family_label_tl \l_@@_family_fontopts_clist
                          852
                                  { \clist_clear :N \l_@@_family_fontopts_clist }
                                 \tl_clear :N \l_@@_family_label_tl
                          853
                          854
                          855
                                 \clist_set :Nx \l_@@_all_features_clist
                          856
                          857
                                    \g_@@_default_fontopts_clist,
                                    \l_@@_family_fontopts_clist,
                          858
                                    \l_@@_fontopts_clist,
                          859
                          860
                                   #1
                          861
                          862
                              \tl_set :Nx \l_@@_fontid_tl { \tl_to_str :N \l_fontspec_fontname_tl- :-\tl_to_str :N \l_@@_all_fea
                          863
                              \typeout{fontid : \l_@@_fontid_tl}
                          866 (/debug)
                          867 }
\@@_preparse_features :
                          #1 : feature options
                          #2: font name
                              Perform the (multi-step) feature parsing process.
                              Convert the requested features to font definition strings. First the features are parsed
                          for information about font loading (whether it's a named font or external font, etc.), and
                          then information is extracted for the names of the other shape fonts.
                          868 \cs_new : Nn \@@_preparse_features :
                          Detect if external fonts are to be used, possibly automatically, and parse fontspec features
                          for bold/italic fonts and their features.
                               \@@_if_detect_external :VT \l_@@_basename_tl
                          870
                          871
                                { \keys_set :nn {fontspec-preparse-external} {ExternalLocation} }
                          872
                          873
                               \keys_set_known :nxN {fontspec-preparse-external}
                          874
                               { \l_@@_all_features_clist }
                          875
                                \l_@@_keys_leftover_clist
```

```
of the upright font (\l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl), this latter is the new 'general font name'
                              to use.
                              876
                                  \tl_set_eq :NN \l_fontspec_fontname_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl
                                   \keys_set_known :nxN {fontspec-renderer} {\l_@@_keys_leftover_clist}
                              877
                                     \l_@@_keys_leftover_clist
                              878
                                  \keys_set_known :nxN {fontspec-preparse} {\l_@@_keys_leftover_clist}
                              880
                                     \l_@@_fontfeat_clist
                              881 }
            \@@_load_font :
                              882 \cs_new : Nn \@@_load_font :
                              883 {
                              884
                                   \@@_font_set :Nnn \l_fontspec_font
                                      { \@@_fullname :n {\l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl} } {\f@size pt}
                              886
                                  \@@_font_if_null :NT \l_fontspec_font { \@@_error :nx {font-not-found} {\l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl
                                  \@@_set_font_type :
                              887
                                   \@@_font_gset :Nnn \l_fontspec_font
                              888
                                      { \@@_fullname :n {\l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl} } {\f@size pt}
                              889
                              890
                                  \l_fontspec_font % this is necessary for LuaLaTeX to check the scripts properly
                              891 }
\@@_if_detect_external :nnT Check if either the fontname ends with a known font extension.
                              892 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \@@_if_detect_external :n {T}
                              893 {
                                  \clist_map_inline :Nn \l_@@_extensions_clist
                              894
                              895
                                     \bool_set_false :N \l_@@_tmpa_bool
                              896
                                     \tl_if_in :nnT {#1 <= end_of_string} {##1 <= end_of_string}</pre>
                              897
                                       { \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_tmpa_bool \clist_map_break : }
                              898
                              899
                              900
                                  \bool_if :NTF \l_@@_tmpa_bool \prg_return_true : \prg_return_false :
                              902\cs_generate_variant :Nn \@@_if_detect_external :nT {V}
            \@@_fullname :n Constructs the complete font name based on a common piece of info.
                              903 \cs_set :Nn \@@_fullname :n
                              904 {
                              905 \@@_namewrap :n { #1 \l_@@_extension_tl }
                              906 \l_fontspec_renderer_tl
                              907 \l_@@_optical_size_tl
                              908 }
       \@@_set_scriptlang :
                             Only necessary for OpenType fonts. First check if the font supports scripts, then apply de-
                              faults if none are explicitly requested. Similarly with the language settings.
                              909 \cs_new :Nn \@@_set_scriptlang :
                              910 {
                              911
                                  \bool_if :NT \l_@@_firsttime_bool
                              912
                                     \tl_if_empty :NTF \l_@@_script_name_tl
                              913
                              914
```

When \l\_fontspec\_fontname\_tl is augmented with a prefix or whatever to create the name

{

```
915
         \fontspec_check_script :nTF {latn}
916
917
           \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_script_name_tl {Latin}
918
           \tl_if_empty :NT \l_@@_lang_name_tl
919
920
             \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_lang_name_tl {Default}
921
922
           \keys_set :nx {fontspec} {Script=\l_@@_script_name_tl}
           \keys_set :nx {fontspec} {Language=\l_@@_lang_name_tl}
923
924
925
           \@@_info :n {no-scripts}
927
928
929
         \tl_if_empty :NT \l_@@_lang_name_tl
930
931
932
           \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_lang_name_tl {Default}
933
934
         \keys_set :nx {fontspec} {Script=\l_@@_script_name_tl}
         \keys_set :nx {fontspec} {Language=\l_@@_lang_name_tl}
936
937
938
```

\@@\_save\_family :nTF Check if the family is unique and, if so, save its information. (\addfontfeature and other macros use this data.) Then the font family and its shapes are defined in the NFSS.

Now we have a unique (in fact, too unique!) string that contains the family name and every option in abbreviated form. This is used with a counter to create a simple NFSS family name for the font we're selecting.

```
939 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \@@_save_family :n {TF}
940 {
941 \( debug \)\typeout\( save^ family : ~ #1 \)
     \cs_if_exist :NT \l_@@_nfss_fam_tl
942
943
944
       \cs_{eq} : cN \{g_@@_UID_\l_@@_fontid_tl\} \l_@@_nfss_fam_tl \}
945
946
     \cs_if_exist :cF {g_@@_UID_\l_@@_fontid_tl}
947
      % The font name is fully expanded, in case it's defined in terms of macros, before having its space
948
       \tl_set :Nx \l_@@_tmp_tl {#1}
949
950
       \tl_remove_all :Nn \l_@@_tmp_tl {~}
951
       \cs_if_exist : cTF \{g_@Q_family_ \l_@Q_tmp_tl _int\}
952
        { \int_gincr : c \{g_@@_family_ \l_@@_tmp_tl _int\} }
953
                          {g_0e_family_ \label{eq:g_ee} 1_ee_th_int} }
954
        { \int_new :c
955
956
       tl_gset : cx \{g_@Q_UID_\l_@Q_fontid_tl\}
957
958
         l_0e_t = 1  (\int_use :c {g_0e_family_ \l_0e_tmp_tl _int})
959
        }
```

960

```
\label{local_section} $$ \tilde{g}_0 = Nv \leq family_tl \{g_0 = UID_l_0 = fontid_tl\} $$
                               \cs_if_exist :cTF {g_@@_ \l_fontspec_family_tl _prop}
                          963
                                  \prg_return_false : \prg_return_true :
                          964 }
                         Saves the relevant font information for future processing.
\@@_save_fontinfo :nn
                          965 \cs_new : Nn \@@_save_fontinfo :
                          966 {
                                \label{lem:continuous} $$ \operatorname{g_@Q_ \label{continuous} \label{lem:continuous} } $$ \operatorname{g_QQ_ \label{lem:continuous} \label{lem:continuous} } $$
                          967
                               \prop_gput : cnx \{g_@@_ \l_fontspec_family_tl \_prop\} \{fontname\} \{ \l_@@_basename_tl \}
                          968
                               \prop_gput :cnx {g_@@_ \l_fontspec_family_tl _prop} {options} { \l_@@_all_features_clist }
                          969
                               \prop_gput :cnx {g_@@_ \l_fontspec_family_tl _prop} {fontdef}
                          970
                          971
                          972
                                  \@@_fullname :n {\l_fontspec_fontname_tl} :
                                 \l_@@_pre_feat_sclist \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist
                          973
                          974
                          975
                               \label{lem:converged} $$ \operatorname{cnV} \{g_@Q_ \l_fontspec_family_tl \_prop\} \{script-num\} \l_fontspec_script_int \} $$
                          976
                               \label{lem:convergence} $$\operatorname{g_@Q_ \l_fontspec\_family_tl \_prop} {\operatorname{script-tag} \l_fontspec\_script\_tl} $$
                               \prop_gput :cnV {g_@@_ \l_fontspec_family_tl _prop} {lang-tag} \l_fontspec_lang_tl
                          979
                          980 }
```

### 23.5.1 Setting font shapes in a family

All NFSS specifications take their default values, so if any of them are redefined, the shapes will be selected to fit in with the current state. For example, if \bfdefault is redefined to b, all bold shapes defined by this package will also be assigned to b.

The combination shapes are searched first because they use information that may be redefined in the single cases. E.g., if no bold font is specified then set\_autofont will attempt to set it. This has subtle/small ramifications on the logic of choosing the bold italic font.

\@@\_find\_autofonts :

```
981 \cs_new : Nn \@@_find_autofonts :
982 {
983
                                      \bool_if :nF {\l_@@_noit_bool || \l_@@_nobf_bool}
984
                                             \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc Nn}} \ensuremath{\mbox{\
985
986
                                            \@@_set_autofont :Nnn \l_fontspec_fontname_bfit_tl {\l_fontspec_fontname_bf_tl} {/I}
987
                                            \@@_set_autofont :Nnn \l_fontspec_fontname_bfit_tl {\l_fontspec_fontname_tl} {/BI}
988
989
                                      \bool_if :NF \l_@@_nobf_bool
990
991
992
                                             \@@_set_autofont :Nnn \l_fontspec_fontname_bf_tl {\l_fontspec_fontname_tl} {/B}
993
                                           }
994
                                      \bool_if :NF \l_@@_noit_bool
995
996
                                            \ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\sc dontspec}}}} \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc dontspec}} \ensuremath
997
998
999
```

```
1000 \@@_set_autofont :Nnn \l_fontspec_fontname_bfsl_tl {\l_fontspec_fontname_sl_tl} {/B}
                1001 }
\@@_set_faces :
                1002 \cs_new :Nn \@@_set_faces :
                1003 {
                1004
                     \@@_add_nfssfont :oooo \mddefault \updefault \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
                                                                                              \l_@@_fontfeat_up_clist
                     \@@_add_nfssfont :oooo \bfdefault \updefault \l_fontspec_fontname_bf_tl \\l_@@_fontfeat_bf_clist
                1005
                     \@@_add_nfssfont :oooo \mddefault \itdefault \l_fontspec_fontname_it_tl \l_@@_fontfeat_it_clist
                1006
                     \@@_add_nfssfont :oooo \mddefault \sldefault \l_fontspec_fontname_sl_tl \l_@@_fontfeat_sl_clist
                     \@@_add_nfssfont :oooo \bfdefault \itdefault \l_fontspec_fontname_bfit_tl \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clis
                1008
                1009
                     \@@_add_nfssfont :oooo \bfdefault \sldefault \l_fontspec_fontname_bfsl_tl \l_@@_fontfeat_bfsl_clis
                     \prop_map_inline :Nn \l_@@_nfssfont_prop { \@@_set_faces_aux :nnnnn ##2 }
                1013 \cs_new : Nn \@@_set_faces_aux :nnnnn
                1014 {
                1015
                     \fontspec_complete_fontname : Nn \l_@@_curr_fontname_tl {#3}
                     \@@_make_font_shapes :Nnnnn \l_@@_curr_fontname_tl {#1} {#2} {#4} {#5}
```

### 23.5.2 Fonts

\@@\_set\_font\_type :

Now check if the font is to be rendered with ATSUI or Harfbuzz. This will either be automatic (based on the font type), or specified by the user via a font feature.

This macro sets booleans accordingly depending if the font in \1\_fontspec\_font is an AAT font or an OpenType font or a font with feature axes (either AAT or Multiple Master), respectively.

```
1018 \cs_new :Nn \@@_set_font_type :
1019 (*xetexx)
1020 {
     \bool_set_false :N \l_@@_tfm_bool
     \bool_set_false :N \l_@@_atsui_bool
     \bool_set_false :N \l_@@_ot_bool
1024
     \bool_set_false :N \l_@@_mm_bool
     \bool_set_false :N \l_@@_graphite_bool
     \ifcase\XeTeXfonttype\l_fontspec_font
1026
       \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_tfm_bool
1028
     \or
       \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_atsui_bool
       \ifnum\XeTeXcountvariations\l_fontspec_font > \c_zero
          \bool_set_true :N \1_@@_mm_bool
       \bool_set_true :N \1_@@_ot_bool
1034
1035
```

If automatic, the \l\_fontspec\_renderer\_tl token list will still be empty (other suffices that could be added will be later in the feature processing), and if it is indeed still empty, assign it a value so that the other weights of the font are specifically loaded with the same renderer.

```
1036 \tl_if_empty :NT \l_fontspec_renderer_tl
1037 {
```

```
\bool_if :NTF \l_@@_atsui_bool
1038
         { \tl_set :Nn \l_fontspec_renderer_tl {/AAT} }
1040
1041
            \bool_if :NT \l_@@_ot_bool
1042
             { \tl_set :Nn \l_fontspec_renderer_tl {/OT} }
1043
1044
1045 }
1046 (/xetexx)
1047 \langle *luatex \rangle
1048 {
1049
     \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_ot_bool
1050 }
1051 (/luatex)
```

\@@\_set\_autofont :Nnn #1 : Font name tl

#2: Base font name

#3: Font name modifier

This function looks for font with  $\langle name \rangle$  and  $\langle modifier \rangle$  #2#3, and if found (i.e., different to font with name #2) stores it in tl #1. A modifier is something like /B to look for a bold font, for example.

We can't match external fonts in this way (in X $\exists$ T $\in$ X anyway; todo: test with LuaTeX). If  $\langle font \ name \ tl \rangle$  is not empty, then it's already been specified by the user so abort. If  $\langle Base \ font \ name \rangle$  is not given, we also abort for obvious reasons.

If  $\langle font \ name \ tl \rangle$  is empty, then proceed. If not found,  $\langle font \ name \ tl \rangle$  remains empty. Otherwise, we have a match.

```
1052 \cs_generate_variant :Nn \tl_if_empty :nF {x}
1053 \cs_new :Nn \@@_set_autofont :Nnn
1054 {
     \bool_if :NF \l_@@_external_bool
1056
     \tl_if_empty :xF {#2}
1058
1059
       \tl_if_empty :NT #1
1060
1061
          \@@_if_autofont :nnTF {#2} {#3}
          { \tl_set :Nx #1 {#2#3} }
1062
            \@@_info :nx {no-font-shape} {#2#3} }
1063
1065
1066
1067
1068
1069 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \@@_if_autofont :nn {T,TF}
1070 {
     \ensuremath{\mbox{@Q_font\_set}} : Nnn \l_tmpb_font { \ensuremath{\mbox{@Q_fullname}} :n {\#1\#2} } {\ensuremath{\mbox{f@size}} pt}
     \str_if_eq_x :nnTF { \fontname \l_tmpa_font } { \fontname \l_tmpb_font }
1074
      { \prg_return_false : }
1075
      { \prg_return_true : }
1076 }
```

```
\@@_make_font_shapes : Nnnnn #1 : Font name
                            #2 : Font series
                            #3 : Font shape
                            #4 : Font features
                            #5 : Size features
                               This macro eventually uses \DeclareFontShape to define the font shape in question.
                           1077 \cs_new : Nn \@@_make_font_shapes : Nnnnn
                           1078 {
                           1079
                                \group_begin :
                                  \keys_set_known :nxN {fontspec-preparse-external} { #4 } \l_@@_leftover_clist
                           1080
                           1081
                                  \@@_load_fontname :n {#1}
                                  1082
                           1083
                                \group_end :
                           1084 }
                           1085
                           1086 \cs_new :Nn \@@_load_fontname :n
                           1087 {
                           1088
                                   \@@_load_external_fontoptions :Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_tl {#1}
                           1089
                                  { \clist_clear :N \l_@@_fontopts_clist }
                           1090
                                  \@@_font_set :Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\@@_fullname :n {\l_fontspec_fontname_tl}} {\f@size pt}
                           1092
                                  \ensuremath{\verb| @Q_font_if_null : NT \l_fontspec_font { \ensuremath{\verb| @Q_error : nx {font-not-found} { \#1} } }}
                           1093 }
   \@@_declare_shape :nnnn #1 : Font series
                            #2: Font shape
                            #3 : Font features
                            #4 : Size features
                               Wrapper for \DeclareFontShape. And finally the actual font shape declaration using
                            \1_@@_nfss_tl defined above. \1_@@_postadjust_tl is defined in various places to deal
                            with things like the hyphenation character and interword spacing.
                               The main part is to loop through SizeFeatures arguments, which are of the form
                                               SizeFeatures={{<one>},{<two>},{<three>}}.
                           1094 \cs_new :Nn \@@_declare_shape :nnnn
                           1095 {
                           1096
                                \tl_clear :N \l_@@_nfss_tl
                                \tl_clear :N \l_@@_nfss_sc_tl
                                \tl_set_eq :NN \l_@@_saved_fontname_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
                           1098
                           1099
                           1100
                                 \exp_args :Nx \clist_map_inline :nn {#4}
                                  \tl_clear :N \l_@@_size_tl
                                  \tl_set_eq :NN \l_@@_sizedfont_tl \l_@@_saved_fontname_tl % in case not spec'ed
                           1104
                           1105
                                  \keys_set_known :nxN {fontspec-sizing} { \exp_after :wN \use :n ##1 }
                           1106
                                     \l_@@_sizing_leftover_clist
                                   \tl_if_empty :NT \l_@@_size_tl { \@@_error :n {no-size-info} }
                           1108
                           1109
                                  % "normal"
                                  \@@_load_fontname :n {\l_@@_sizedfont_tl}
                                  \@@_setup_nfss :Nnn \l_@@_nfss_tl {#3} {}
```

```
% small caps
1114
                     \clist_set_eq :NN \l_@@_fontfeat_curr_clist \l_@@_fontfeat_sc_clist
1115
1116
                     \bool_if :NF \1_@@_nosc_bool
1117
1118
                           \tl_if_empty :NTF \l_fontspec_fontname_sc_tl
1119
1120 \langle debug \rangle
                                            \typeout{Attempting small caps?}
                                 \@@_make_smallcaps :TF
                                             \typeout{Small caps found.}
1123 (debug)
                                      \clist_put_left :Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_curr_clist {Letters=SmallCaps}
1124
1125
                                             \typeout{Small caps not found.}
1127 (debug)
                                      \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_nosc_bool
1128
1129
1130
                          { \ensuremath{\mbox{@0\_load\_fontname}} :n {\ensuremath{\mbox{l_fontspec\_fontname\_sc\_tl}} }% local for each size
1132
                        }
1133
1134
                     \bool_if :NF \l_@@_nosc_bool
1135
1136
                          \ensuremath{\verb||} \ensuremath{\ensuremath{||} \ensuremath{\ensuremath{||} \ensuremath{\ensuremath{||} \ensuremath{\ensuremath{||} \ensuremath{\ensuremath{||} \ensuremath{\ensuremath{||} \ensuremath{\ensuremath{||} \ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{||} \ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremat
1137
1138
1139
1140
                \@@_declare_shapes_normal :nn {#1} {#2}
1141
                \@@_declare_shape_slanted :nn {#1} {#2}
1142
1143
               \@@_declare_shape_loginfo :nnn {#1} {#2} {#3}
1144 }
1145 \cs_generate_variant :Nn \@@_declare_shape :nnnn {nnxx}
1147 \cs_new :Nn \@@_setup_nfss :Nnn
1148 {
               \@@_get_features :Nn \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist
1149
                { #2 , \l_@@_sizing_leftover_clist , #3 }
1150
                \tl_put_right :Nx #1
                     <\l_00_size_tl> \l_00_scale_tl
1154
                     \@@_fontwrap :n
1155
1156
1157
                          \@@_fullname :n { \l_fontspec_fontname_tl }
1158
                          : \l_@@_pre_feat_sclist \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist
1159
1160
1161 }
```

```
1163 \cs_new :Nn \@@_declare_shapes_normal :nn
1164 {
1165
       \@@_DeclareFontShape :xxxxxx {\g_fontspec_encoding_tl} {\l_fontspec_family_tl}
1166
          {#1} {#2} {\lower {1}_{@0\_nfss\_tl}{\lower {1}_{@0\_postadjust\_tl}}}
1167
1168
        \bool_if :NF \l_@@_nosc_bool
1169
1170
         \@@_DeclareFontShape :xxxxxx {\g_fontspec_encoding_tl} {\l_fontspec_family_tl}
            {\str_if_eq_x :nnTF {#2} {\itdefault} \scdefault \scdefault}
            {\l_00_nfss\_sc\_tl}{\l_00_postadjust\_tl}
1174
1175 }
1176
1177 \cs_new :Nn \@@_DeclareFontShape :nnnnnn
1178 {
1179
     \group_begin :
1180
        \normalsize
        \cs_undefine :c {#1/#2/#3/#4/\f@size}
1181
1182
      \group_end :
     \DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}
1183
1184 }
1185\cs_generate_variant :Nn \@@_DeclareFontShape :nnnnnn {xxxxxx}
```

This extra stuff for the slanted shape substitution is a little bit awkward. We define the slanted shape to be a synonym for it when (a) we're defining an italic font, but also (b) when the default slanted shape isn't 'it'. (Presumably this turned up once in a test and I realised it caused problems. I doubt this would happen much.)

We should test when a slanted font has been specified and not run this code if so, but the \@@\_set\_slanted: code will overwrite this anyway if necessary.

```
1186 \cs_new :Nn \@@_declare_shape_slanted :nn
1187 {
1188
     \bool_if :nT
1189
1190
        \str_if_eq_x_p : nn {#2} {\itdefault} &&
       !(\str_if_eq_x_p :nn {\itdefault} {\sldefault})
1191
1192
      }
1193
       \@@_DeclareFontShape :xxxxxx {\g_fontspec_encoding_tl}{\l_fontspec_family_tl}{#1}{\sldefault}
1194
1195
          {<->ssub*\l_fontspec_family_tl/#1/\itdefault}{\l_@@_postadjust_tl}
1196
1197 }
Lastly some informative messaging.
1198 \cs_new :Nn \@@_declare_shape_loginfo :nnn
1199 {
1200
     \tl_gput_right :Nx \l_fontspec_defined_shapes_tl
1201
       \exp_not :n { \\ \\ }
       * '\exp_not :N \str_case :nnF {#1/#2}
1204
        {
           {\mddefault/\updefault} {normal}
1206
           {\bfdefault/\updefault} {bold}
```

```
{\mddefault/\itdefault} {italic}
                                               {\bfdefault/\itdefault} {bold italic}
1208
1209
                                      } {#2/#3}'^
                                 with NFSS spec. : \exp_not :N \\
                                  \label{local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_loc
                                  \exp_not :n { \\ \\ }
                                 *~ '\exp_not :N \str_case :nnF {#1/\scdefault}
1214
1215
                                               {\mddefault/\scdefault} {small caps}
1216
                                               {\bfdefault/\scdefault} {bold small caps}
                                               {\mddefault/\sidefault} {italic small caps}
                                              {\bfdefault/\sidefault} {bold italic small caps}
1218
                                     } {#2/#3}'~
1219
                                 with NFSS spec. : \exp_not :N \\
                                 \l_00_nfss_sc_tl
                                 \tl_if_empty :NF \l_@@_postadjust_tl
                                     \exp_not :N \\ and font adjustment code : \exp_not :N \\ \l_@@_postadjust_tl
1224
                                      }
1226
1227 }
```

\l\_@e\_pre\_feat\_sclist These are the features always applied to a font selection before other features.

```
1228 \clist_set :Nn \l_@@_pre_feat_sclist
1229 (*xetexx)
1230 {
     \bool_if :NT \l_@@_ot_bool
       \tl_if_empty :NF \l_fontspec_script_tl
1234
1235
          script = \l_fontspec_script_tl;
1236
          language = \l_fontspec_lang_tl ;
1238
1239 }
1240 (/xetexx)
1241 (*luatex)
1242 {
               = \l_fontspec_mode_tl ;
1243
     mode
     \tl_if_empty :NF \l_fontspec_script_tl
1244
1245
      {
1246
       script = \l_fontspec_script_tl;
1247
       language = \l_fontspec_lang_tl ;
1248
1249 }
1250 (/luatex)
```

## 23.5.3 Features

\@@\_get\_features :Nn This macro is a wrapper for \keys\_set:nn which expands and adds a default specification to the original passed options. It begins by initialising the commands used to hold fontfeature specific strings. Its argument is any additional features to prepend to the default.

```
1251 \cs_set :Nn \@@_get_features :Nn
                \sclist_clear :N \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist
                \tl_clear :N \l_@@_scale_tl
                \tl_set_eq :NN \l_@@_opacity_tl \g_@@_opacity_tl
                \tl_set_eq :NN \l_@@_hexcol_tl \g_@@_hexcol_tl
                tl_set_eq : NN \l_@@_postadjust_tl \g_@@_postadjust_tl
                \tl_clear :N \l_@@_wordspace_adjust_tl
           1259
                \tl_clear :N \l_@@_punctspace_adjust_tl
                \keys_set_known :nxN {fontspec-renderer} {\l_@@_fontfeat_clist,#2}
           1261
                  \l_@@_keys_leftover_clist
                \keys_set :nx {fontspec} {\l_@@_keys_leftover_clist}
           1263
            Finish the colour specification. Do not set the colour if not explicitly spec'd else \color
            (using specials) will not work.
           1264
                \str_if_eq_x : nnF { \l_@@_hexcol_tl \l_@@_opacity_tl }
           1265
                                  { \g_0_{\text{eq}} = 1 \g_0_{\text{eq}} = 1 \g_0_{\text{eq}}
           1266
                  \ensuremath{\mbox{@Q\_update\_featstr}} : n { color = \l_@Q_hexcol_tl\l_@Q_opacity_tl }
                 }
                \tl_set_eq :NN #1 \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist
\@@_init: Initialisations that either need to occur globally: (all setting of these variables is done locally
            inside a group)
           1272 \tl_clear :N \l_@@_family_label_tl
           1273 \tl_clear :N \l_fontspec_fontname_bf_tl
           1274 \tl_clear :N \l_fontspec_fontname_it_tl
           1275 \tl_clear :N \l_fontspec_fake_slant_tl
           1276 \tl_clear :N \l_fontspec_fake_embolden_tl
           1277 \tl_clear :N \l_fontspec_fontname_bfit_tl
           1278 \tl_clear :N \l_fontspec_fontname_sl_tl
           1279 \tl_clear :N \l_fontspec_fontname_bfsl_tl
           1280 \tl_clear :N \l_fontspec_fontname_sc_tl
           1281 \tl_clear :N \l_@@_fontfeat_up_clist
           1282 \tl_clear :N \l_@@_fontfeat_bf_clist
           1283 \tl_clear :N \l_@@_fontfeat_it_clist
           1284 \tl_clear :N \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist
           1285 \tl_clear :N \l_@@_fontfeat_sl_clist
           1286 \tl_clear :N \l_@@_fontfeat_bfsl_clist
           1287 \tl_clear :N \l_@@_fontfeat_sc_clist
           1288 \tl_clear :N \l_@@_script_name_tl
           1289 \tl_clear :N \l_fontspec_script_tl
           1290 \tl_clear :N \l_@@_lang_name_tl
           1291 \tl_clear :N \l_fontspec_lang_tl
           1294 \clist_set :Nn \l_@@_sizefeat_clist {Size={-}}
           1295 \tl_new :N \g_@@_hexcol_tl
           1296 \tl_new : N \g_@@_opacity_tl
```

```
1298 \tl_set :Nn \g_@@_opacity_tl {FF~}
                                                  Or once per fontspec font invocation: (Some of these may be redundant. Check whether
                                                  they're assigned to globally or not.)
                                                 1299 \cs_set :Npn \@@_init :
                                                1300 {
                                                            \bool_set_false :N \l_@@_ot_bool
                                                1301
                                                1302
                                                           \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_firsttime_bool
                                                1303 \cs_set :Npn \@@_namewrap :n ##1 { ##1 }
                                                1304 \tl_clear :N \l_@@_optical_size_tl
                                                1305 \tl_clear :N \l_fontspec_renderer_tl
                                                1306
                                                          \tl_clear :N \l_fontspec_defined_shapes_tl
                                                1307 \tl_clear :N \g_@@_curr_series_tl
                                                1308
                                                1309 % This is for detecting font families when assigning default features.
                                                1310 % Replace defaults for the standard families because they're not set in the usual way :
                                                            \exp_args :NV \str_case :nnF {\l_@@_family_label_tl}
                                                               {\rmdefault} { \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_family_label_tl {\g_@@_rmfamily_family} }
                                                               1314
                                                               {\ttdefault} { \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_family_label_tl {\g_@@_ttfamily_family} }
                                                1316
                                                1318 (*luatex)
                                                           \tl_set :Nn \l_fontspec_mode_tl {node}
                                                1320 \int_set :Nn \luatex_prehyphenchar :D { '\- } % fixme
                                                          \int_zero :N \luatex_posthyphenchar :D
                                                1322 \int_zero :N \luatex_preexhyphenchar :D
                                                                                                                                                             % fixme
                                                1323 \int_zero :N \luatex_postexhyphenchar :D
                                                                                                                                                             % fixme
                                                1324 (/luatex)
                                                1325 }
\@@_make_smallcaps :TF This macro checks if the font contains small caps.
                                                1326 \cs_set :Nn \fontspec_make_ot_smallcaps :TF
                                                1328 \fontspec_check_ot_feat :nTF {+smcp} {#1} {#2}
                                                1329 }
                                                1330 (*xetexx)
                                                1331 \cs_set :Nn \@@_make_smallcaps :TF
                                                1332 {
                                                           \bool_if :NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
                                                1334
                                                             { \fontspec_make_ot_smallcaps :TF {#1} {#2} }
                                                             {
                                                 1336
                                                                  \bool_if :NT \l_@@_atsui_bool
                                                                     { \fontspec_make_AAT_feature_string :nnTF {3}{3} {#1} {#2} }
                                                1338
                                                1339 }
                                                1340 \langle /xetexx \rangle
                                                1341 (*luatex)
                                                1342 \cs_set_eq : NN \eqref{eq:nmake_smallcaps:TF} \fontspec_make_ot_smallcaps : TF \eqref{
                                                1343 (/luatex)
```

1297 \tl\_set :Nn \g\_@@\_hexcol\_tl {000000}

\sclist\_put\_right :Nn I'm hardly going to write an 'sclist' module but a couple of functions are useful. Here, items in semi-colon lists are always followed by a semi-colon (as opposed to the s.-c's being placed between elements) so we can append sclists without worrying about it.

```
1344\cs_set_eq :NN \sclist_clear :N \tl_clear :N
1345\cs_new :Nn \sclist_gput_right :Nn
1346 { \tl_gput_right :Nn #1 {#2;} }
1347\cs_generate_variant :Nn \sclist_gput_right :Nn {Nx}
```

\@@\_update\_featstr :n \1\_@@\_rawfeatures\_sclist is the string used to define the list of specific font features. Each time another font feature is requested, this macro is used to add that feature to the list. Font features are separated by semicolons.

```
1348 \cs_new : Nn \@@_update_featstr :n
1349 {
1350 \bool_if : NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool
1351 {
1352 \sclist_gput_right : Nx \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist {#1}
1353 }
1354 }
```

\fontspec\_make\_feature :nnn This macro is called by each feature key selected, and runs according to which type of font is selected.

```
1355 \cs_new :Nn \fontspec_make_feature :nnn
1356 (*xetexx)
1357 {
     \bool_if :NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
1358
      { \fontspec_make_OT_feature :n {#3} }
1360
         \bool_if :NT \l_@@_atsui_bool
1361
          { \fontspec_make_AAT_feature :nn {#1}{#2} }
1362
1363
1364 }
1365 (/xetexx)
1366 (*luatex)
1367 { \fontspec_make_OT_feature :n {#3} }
1368 (/luatex)
1369 \cs_generate_variant :Nn \fontspec_make_feature :nnn {nnx}
1370 \cs_new :Nn \fontspec_make_AAT_feature :nn
1371 {
     \tl_if_empty :nTF {#1}
      { \@@_warning :n {aat-feature-not-exist} }
1374
1375
         \fontspec_make_AAT_feature_string :nnTF {#1}{#2}
1376
           \@@_update_featstr :n {\l_fontspec_feature_string_tl}
1378
         }
           \@@_warning :nx {aat-feature-not-exist-in-font} {#1,#2} }
1379
1380
1381 }
1382 \cs_new : Nn \fontspec_make_OT_feature : n
1384
     \tl_if_empty :nTF {#1}
```

```
{ \@@_warning :n {icu-feature-not-exist} }
                                 1387
                                           \fontspec_check_ot_feat :nTF {#1}
                                 1388
                                 1389
                                             \@@_update_featstr :n {#1}
                                 1390
                                 1391
                                              \@@_warning :nx {icu-feature-not-exist-in-font} {#1} }
                                 1392
                                 1393 }
                                 1394 \cs_new_protected :Nn \fontspec_make_numbered_feature :nn
                                 1395 {
                                       \fontspec_check_ot_feat :nTF {#1}
                                 1396
                                 1397
                                 1398
                                         \@@_update_featstr :n { #1 = #2 }
                                 1399
                                        { \@@_warning :nx {icu-feature-not-exist-in-font} {#1} }
                                 1400
                                 1401 }
                                 1402 \cs_generate_variant :Nn \fontspec_make_numbered_feature :nn {xn}
    \@@_define_font_feature :n
                                  These macros are used in order to simplify font feature definition later on.
<code>@_define_feature_option</code> :nnnnn _{1403}\cs_new :Nn <code>\@@_define_font_feature</code> :n
pec_define_numbered_feat :nnnn _{1404} {
                                 1405
                                       \keys_define :nn {fontspec} { #1 .multichoice : }
                                 1406 }
                                 1407 \cs_new : Nn \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn
                                 1408 {
                                       \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
                                 1409
                                 1410
                                         #1/#2 .code :n = { \fontspec_make_feature :nnn{#3}{#4}{#5} }
                                 1411
                                 1412
                                 1413 }
                                 1414 \cs_new : Nn \fontspec_define_numbered_feat :nnnn
                                 1415 {
                                 1416
                                       \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
                                 1417
                                 1418
                                         #1/#2 .code :n =
                                            { \fontspec_make_numbered_feature :nn {#3}{#4} }
                                 1419
                                 1420
                                 1421 }
```

:\_make\_AAT\_feature\_string :nnTF

This macro takes the numerical codes for a font feature and creates a specified macro containing the string required in the font definition to turn that feature on or off. Used primarily in [...], but also used to check if small caps exists in the requested font (see page 81).

For exclusive selectors, it's easy; just grab the string: For *non*-exclusive selectors, it's a little more complex. If the selector is even, it corresponds to switching the feature on. If the selector is odd, it corresponds to switching the feature off. But  $X_{\overline{A}}T_{\overline{E}}X$  doesn't return a selector string for this number, since the feature is defined for the 'switching on' value. So we need to check the selector of the previous number, and then prefix the feature string with! to denote the switch.

Finally, save out the complete feature string in \l\_fontspec\_feature\_string\_tl.

1422 \prg\_new\_conditional :Nnn \fontspec\_make\_AAT\_feature\_string :nn {TF,T,F}

1423 {

```
\tl_set :Nx \l_tmpa_tl { \XeTeXfeaturename \l_fontspec_font #1 }
1424
      \tl_if_empty :NTF \l_tmpa_tl
1425
1426
      { \prg_return_false : }
1427
1428
       \int_compare :nTF { \XeTeXisexclusivefeature\l_fontspec_font #1 > 0 }
1429
1430
         \tl_set :Nx \l_tmpb_tl {\XeTeXselectorname\l_fontspec_font #1\space #2}
1431
         }
1432
1433
          \int_if_even :nTF {#2}
1434
          \tl_set :Nx \l_tmpb_tl {\XeTeXselectorname\l_fontspec_font #1\space #2}
1435
1436
           }
1437
1438
            \tl_set :Nx \l_tmpb_tl
1439
              \XeTeXselectorname\l_fontspec_font #1\space \numexpr#2-1\relax
1440
1441
1442
            \tl_if_empty :NF \l_tmpb_tl { \tl_put_left :Nn \l_tmpb_tl {!} }
1443
1445
        \tl_if_empty :NTF \l_tmpb_tl
1446
        { \prg_return_false : }
1447
          \tl_set :Nx \l_fontspec_feature_string_tl { \l_tmpa_tl = \l_tmpb_tl }
1448
1449
          \prg_return_true :
1450
1451
1452
```

\fontspec\_iv\_str\_to\_num :Nn
\fontspec\_v\_str\_to\_num :Nn

This macro takes a four character string and converts it to the numerical representation required for  $X_{\overline{1}}$  OpenType script/language/feature purposes. The output is stored in  $\l_{\overline{1}}$  ontspec\_strnum\_int.

The reason it's ugly is because the input can be of the form of any of these : 'abcd', 'abc', 'abc', 'ab', 'ab', 'ab', 'etc. (It is assumed the first two chars are <code>always</code> not spaces.) So this macro reads in the string, delimited by a space; this input is padded with \@emptys and anything beyond four chars is snipped. The \@emptys then are used to reconstruct the spaces in the string to number calculation.

The variant  $fontspec_v_str_to_num$  :n is used when looking at features, which are passed around with prepended plus and minus signs (e.g., +liga, -dlig); it simply strips off the first char of the input before calling the normal  $fontspec_iv_str_to_num$  :n.

```
1465
                              1466 }
                              1467 \cs_generate_variant :Nn \fontspec_iv_str_to_num :Nn {No}
                              1468 \cs_set :Nn \fontspec_v_str_to_num :Nn
                                   \bool_if :nTF
                              1471
                              1472
                                      \tl_if_head_eq_charcode_p :nN {#2} {+} ||
                              1473
                                     \tl_if_head_eq_charcode_p :nN {#2} {-}
                              1474
                                    { \fontspec_iv_str_to_num :No #1 { \use_none :n #2 } }
                              1475
                              1476
                                     { \fontspec_iv_str_to_num :Nn #1 {#2} }
                              1477 }
                              This macro takes an OpenType script tag and checks if it exists in the current font. The out-
\fontspec_check_script :nTF
                               put boolean is \@tempswatrue. \l_fontspec_strnum_int is used to store the number corres-
                               ponding to the script tag string.
                              1478 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \fontspec_check_script :n {TF}
                              1479 (*xetexx)
                              1480 {
                              1481
                                   \fontspec_iv_str_to_num :Nn \l_fontspec_strnum_int {#1}
                                   \int_set :Nn \l_tmpb_int { \XeTeXOTcountscripts \l_fontspec_font }
                              1483
                                    \int_zero :N \l_tmpa_int
                                    \@tempswafalse
                              1484
                              1485
                                    \bool_until_do :nn { \int_compare_p :nNn \l_tmpa_int = \l_tmpb_int }
                              1486
                                     \ifnum \XeTeXOTscripttag\l_fontspec_font \l_tmpa_int = \l_fontspec_strnum_int
                              1487
                                        \@tempswatrue
                              1489
                                        \int_set :Nn \l_tmpa_int {\l_tmpb_int}
                                      \else
                              1490
                                        \int_incr :N \l_tmpa_int
                              1491
                                      \fi
                              1492
                              1493
                              1494
                                   \if@tempswa \prg_return_true : \else : \prg_return_false : \fi :
                              1495 }
                              1496 (/xetexx)
                              1497 (*luatex)
                              1498 {
                                   \directlua{fontspec.check_ot_script("l_fontspec_font", "#1")}
                              1500 \if@tempswa \prg_return_true : \else : \prg_return_false : \fi :
                              1501 }
                              1502 \langle /luatex \rangle
                              This macro takes an OpenType language tag and checks if it exists in the current font/script.
  \fontspec_check_lang :nTF
                               The output boolean is \@tempswatrue. \l_fontspec_strnum_int is used to store the num-
                               ber corresponding to the language tag string. The script used is whatever's held in
                              \l_fontspec_script_int. By default, that's the number corresponding to 'latn'.
                              1503 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \fontspec_check_lang :n {TF}
                              1504 (*xetexx)
                              1505 {
```

+ \ifx \c\_empty\_tl #5 32 \else '#5 \fi

1464

\fontspec\_iv\_str\_to\_num :Nn \l\_fontspec\_strnum\_int {#1}

```
1509
                                                                              \int_zero :N \l_tmpa_int
                                                                              \@tempswafalse
                                                                              \bool_until_do :nn { \int_compare_p :nNn \l_tmpa_int = \l_tmpb_int }
                                                                                 \ifnum\XeTeXOTlanguagetag\l_fontspec_font\l_fontspec_script_int \l_tmpa_int =\l_fontspec_strnum,
                                                                 1514
                                                                                       \@tempswatrue
                                                                 1515
                                                                                       \int_set :Nn \l_tmpa_int {\l_tmpb_int}
                                                                                  \else
                                                                                       \int_incr :N \l_tmpa_int
                                                                                  \fi
                                                                 1518
                                                                 1519
                                                                              \if@tempswa \prg_return_true : \else : \prg_return_false : \fi :
                                                                 1522 (/xetexx)
                                                                 1523 (*luatex)
                                                                 1524 {
                                                                 1525
                                                                            \directlua
                                                                 1526
                                                                               {
                                                                                fontspec.check_ot_lang( "l_fontspec_font", "#1", "\l_fontspec_script_tl" )
                                                                 1528
                                                                 1529
                                                                            \if@tempswa \prg_return_true : \else : \prg_return_false : \fi :
                                                                 1530 }
                                                                  1531 (/luatex)
                                                                   This macro takes an OpenType feature tag and checks if it exists in the current font/script/language.
\fontspec_check_ot_feat :nTF
 \fontspec_check_ot_feat :nT
                                                                   The output boolean is \@tempswa. \l_fontspec_strnum_int is used to store the number cor-
                                                                    responding to the feature tag string. The script used is whatever's held in \1_fontspec_script_int.
                                                                    By default, that's the number corresponding to 'latn'. The language used is \l_fontspec_language_int,
                                                                   by default 0, the 'default language'.
                                                                 1532 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \fontspec_check_ot_feat :n {TF,T}
                                                                 1533 (*xetexx)
                                                                 1534 {
                                                                             \int_set :Nn \l_tmpb_int
                                                                 1536
                                                                                   \XeTeXOTcountfeatures \l_fontspec_font
                                                                 1538
                                                                                                                                     \l_fontspec_script_int
                                                                 1539
                                                                                                                                     \l_fontspec_language_int
                                                                 1540
                                                                              \fontspec_v_str_to_num :Nn \l_fontspec_strnum_int {#1}
                                                                 1541
                                                                              \int_zero :N \l_tmpa_int
                                                                 1542
                                                                              \@tempswafalse
                                                                 1543
                                                                              \bool_until_do :nn { \int_compare_p :nNn \l_tmpa_int = \l_tmpb_int }
                                                                 1544
                                                                 1545
                                                                                \verb|\finum| XeTeXOT feature tag \verb|\l_fontspec_font| l_fontspec_script_int \verb|\l_fontspec_language_int| l_fontspec_language_int| l_fontspec_language
                                                                 1546
                                                                 1547
                                                                                              \l_tmpa_int =\l_fontspec_strnum_int
                                                                 1548
                                                                                       \@tempswatrue
                                                                  1549
                                                                                       \int_set :Nn \l_tmpa_int {\l_tmpb_int}
                                                                                       \int_incr :N \l_tmpa_int
                                                                                   \fi
```

{ \XeTeXOTcountlanguages \l\_fontspec\_font \l\_fontspec\_script\_int }

\int\_set :Nn \l\_tmpb\_int

1507 1508

```
1554
     \if@tempswa \prg_return_true : \else : \prg_return_false : \fi :
1555 }
1556 (/xetexx)
1557 (*luatex)
1558 {
1559
     \directlua
1560
       fontspec.check_ot_feat(
1561
                                 "l_fontspec_font", "#1",
1562
                                "\l_fontspec_lang_tl", "\l_fontspec_script_tl"
1563
1565
     \if@tempswa \prg_return_true : \else : \prg_return_false : \fi :
1566
1567 }
1568 (/luatex)
```

# 23.6 keyval definitions

This is the tedious section where we correlate all possible (eventually) font feature requests with their XHTEX representations.

```
1569 \cs_new : Nn \@@_keys_define_code : nnn
1570 {
1571 \keys_define : nn {#1} { #2 .code : n = {#3} }
1572 }
```

# 23.6.1 Pre-parsing naming information

These features are extracted from the font feature list before all others.

**ExternalLocation** For fonts that aren't installed in the system. If no argument is given, the font is located with kpsewhich; it's either in the current directory or the TEX tree. Otherwise, the argument given defines the file path of the font.

```
1573 \bool_new :N \l_@@_external_bool
1574 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {ExternalLocation}
1575 {
1576 \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_nobf_bool
1577 \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_noit_bool
1578 \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_external_bool
1579 \cs_set :Npn \@@_namewrap :n ##1 { [ #1 ##1 ] }
1580 \{\text{xetexx}\}
1581 \keys_set :nn {fontspec-renderer} {Renderer=OpenType}
1582 \(/\text{xetexx}\)
1583 }
1584 \aliasfontfeature{ExternalLocation}{Path}
```

**Extension** For fonts that aren't installed in the system. Specifies the font extension to use.

```
1585 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {Extension}
1586 {
1587 \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_extension_tl {#1}
```

### 23.6.2 Pre-parsed features

After the font name(s) have been sorted out, now need to extract any renderer/font configuration features that need to be processed before all other font features.

**Renderer** This feature must be processed before all others (the other font shape and features options are also pre-parsed for convenience) because the renderer determines the format of the features and even whether certain features are available.

```
1594 \keys_define :nn {fontspec-renderer}
1595 {
1596
    Renderer .choices :nn =
1597
      {AAT,ICU,OpenType,Graphite,Full,Basic}
1598
1599
       \int_compare :nTF {\l_keys_choice_int <= 4} {</pre>
1600 (*xetexx)
1601
          \tl_set :Nv \l_fontspec_renderer_tl
            { g_fontspec_renderer_tag_ \l_keys_choice_tl }
1603 (/xetexx)
1604 (*luatex)
          \@@_warning :nx {only-xetex-feature} {Renderer=AAT/OpenType/Graphite}
1606 (/luatex)
1607
         }
         {
1609 (*xetexx)
          \@@_warning :nx {only-luatex-feature} {Renderer=Full/Basic}
1611 (/xetexx)
1612 (*luatex)
          \tl_set :Nv \l_fontspec_mode_tl
            { g_fontspec_mode_tag_ \l_keys_choice_tl }
1615 (/luatex)
1616
1617
1619 \tl_set :cn {g_fontspec_renderer_tag_AAT} {/AAT}
1620 \tl_set : cn \{g\_fontspec\_renderer\_tag\_ICU\} \{/OT\}
1621 \tl_set :cn {g_fontspec_renderer_tag_OpenType} {/OT}
1622 \tl_set :cn {g_fontspec_renderer_tag_Graphite} {/GR}
1623 \tl_set :cn {g_fontspec_mode_tag_Full} {node}
1624 \tl_set :cn {g_fontspec_mode_tag_Basic} {base}
```

**OpenType script/language** See later for the resolutions from fontspec features to OpenType definitions.

```
1625 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse} {Script}
1626 {
```

```
1627 \( \text{xetexx} \) \\ \text{keys_set :nn {fontspec-renderer} {Renderer=OpenType} \)
1628 \\ \tl_set :\text{Nn \l_@@_script_name_tl {#1}} \)
1629 \\ \text{Exactly the same :} \]
1630 \\ \text{@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse} {Language} \)
1631 \\ \{
1632 \( \text{xetexx} \) \\ \text{keys_set :nn {fontspec-renderer} {Renderer=OpenType} \)
1633 \\ \\ \tl_set :\text{Nn \l_@@_lang_name_tl {#1}} \)
1634 \\ \}
```

## 23.6.3 Bold/italic choosing options

The Bold, Italic, and BoldItalic features are for defining explicitly the bold and italic fonts used in a font family.

**Bold (NFSS) Series** By default, fontspec uses the default bold series, \bfdefault. We want to be able to make this extensible.

```
1635 \seq_new :N \g_@@_bf_series_seq
1636 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {BoldSeries}
1637 {
1638
    \tl_gset :Nx \g_@@_curr_series_tl { #1 }
1639 \seq_gput_right :Nx \g_@@_bf_series_seq { #1 }
1640 }
Fonts Upright:
1641 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {UprightFont}
1642 {
1643 \fontspec_complete_fontname : Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl {#1}
1644 }
1645 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {FontName}
     \fontspec_complete_fontname : Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl {#1}
1648 }
 Bold:
1649 \cs_generate_variant :Nn \tl_if_eq :nnT {ox}
1650 \cs_generate_variant :Nn \prop_put :Nnn {NxV}
1651 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {BoldFont}
1652 {
1653
     \tl_if_empty :nTF {#1}
1654
1655
       \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_nobf_bool
1656
       \bool_set_false :N \l_@@_nobf_bool
       \fontspec_complete_fontname : Nn \l_@@_curr_bfname_tl {#1}
1661
       \seq_if_empty :NT \g_@@_bf_series_seq
1662
1663
         \tl_gset :Nx \g_@@_curr_series_tl {\bfdefault}
         \seq_put_right :Nx \g_@@_bf_series_seq {\bfdefault}
```

```
1665
       tl_if_eq : oxT \g_eq_curr_series_tl {\bfdefault}
1667
        { \tl_set_eq :NN \l_fontspec_fontname_bf_tl \l_@@_curr_bfname_tl }
1668
1670
1671
       \prop_put :NxV \l_@@_nfss_prop
1672
        {BoldFont-\g_@@_curr_series_tl} \l_@@_curr_bfname_tl
1674
1675 }
1676 \prop_new :N \l_@@_nfss_prop
Same for italic:
1677 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {ItalicFont}
1679
     \tl_if_empty :nTF {#1}
1680
       \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_noit_bool
1681
       \bool_set_false :N \l_@@_noit_bool
1685
       \fontspec_complete_fontname : Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_it_tl {#1}
1686
1687 }
Simpler for bold+italic & slanted:
1688 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {BoldItalicFont}
1689 {
     \verb|\fontspec_complete_fontname : Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_bfit_tl {#1}|
1690
1691 }
1692 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {SlantedFont}
1693 {
     \fontspec_complete_fontname : Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_sl_tl {#1}
1696 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {BoldSlantedFont}
     \fontspec_complete_fontname : Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_bfsl_tl {#1}
1698
1699 }
Small caps isn't pre-parsed because it can vary with others above :
1700 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {SmallCapsFont}
1701 {
     \tl_if_empty :nTF {#1}
      {
       \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_nosc_bool
1704
1705
1706
       \bool_set_false :N \l_@@_nosc_bool
       \fontspec_complete_fontname : Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_sc_tl {#1}
1708
1709
1710 }
```

```
This lets us define supplementary fonts in full ("Baskerville Semibold") or in abbreviation
 ("* Semibold").
1711 \cs_set :Nn \fontspec_complete_fontname :Nn
1712 {
1713 \tl_set :Nx #1 {#2}
1714 \tl_replace_all :Nnx #1 {*} {\l_@@_basename_tl}
1715 (luatex) \tl_remove_all :Nn #1 {~}
1716 }
1717 \cs_generate_variant :Nn \tl_replace_all :Nnn {Nnx}
Features
1718 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse} {UprightFeatures}
     \clist_set :Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_up_clist {#1}
1720
1722 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse} {BoldFeatures}
     \clist_set :Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_bf_clist {#1}
1726% \prop_put :NxV \l_@@_nfss_prop
         {BoldFont-\g_@@_curr_series_tl} \l_@@_curr_bfname_tl
1727 %
1728 }
1729 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse} {ItalicFeatures}
1730 {
1731 \clist_set :Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_it_clist {#1}
1732 }
1733 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse} {BoldItalicFeatures}
1735 \clist_set :Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist {#1}
1736 }
1737 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse} {SlantedFeatures}
1739 \clist_set :Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_sl_clist {#1}
1740 }
1741 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse} {BoldSlantedFeatures}
1742 {
1743
     \clist_set :Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_bfsl_clist {#1}
Note that small caps features can vary by shape, so these in fact aren't pre-parsed.
1745 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {SmallCapsFeatures}
1746 {
1747 \bool_if :NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool
1748 {
      \clist_set :Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_sc_clist {#1}
1749
1750
     }
1751 }
    paragraphFeatures varying by size
1752 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse} {SizeFeatures}
```

1753 {

fontspec\_complete\_fontname: Nn This macro defines #1 as the input with any \* tokens of its input replaced by the font name.

```
1754 \clist_set :Nn \l_@@_sizefeat_clist {#1}
1755 \clist_put_right : Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_up_clist { SizeFeatures = \{#1\} }
1757 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse-nested} {SizeFeatures}
     \clist_set :Nn \l_@@_sizefeat_clist {#1}
1760 \tl_if_empty :NT \l_@@_this_font_tl
    { \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_this_font_tl { -- } } % needs to be non-empty as a flag
1762 }
1763 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse-nested} {Font}
1764 {
1765 \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_this_font_tl {#1}
1767 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {SizeFeatures}
1768 {
1769 % dummy
1770 }
1771 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {Font}
1772 {
1773 % dummy
1774 }
1775 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-sizing} {Size}
1777
     \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_size_tl {#1}
1778 }
{\tt 1779 \ensuremath{ \ensuremath{ \mbox{00}\_ keys\_define\_code}} : nnn \ \{fontspec\mbox{-}sizing\} \ \{Font\}}
     \fontspec_complete_fontname : Nn \l_@@_sizedfont_tl {#1}
1782 }
```

## 23.6.4 Font-independent features

These features can be applied to any font.

**NFSS family** Interactions with other packages will sometimes require setting the NFSS family explicitly. (By default fontspec auto-generates one based on the font name.)

**NFSS series/shape** This option looks similar in name but has a very different function.

```
1790 \prop_new :N \l_@@_nfssfont_prop
1791 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {FontFace}
1792 {
1793 \tl_set :No \l_@@_arg_tl { \use_iii :nnn #1 }
1794 \tl_set_eq :NN \l_@@_this_feat_tl \l_@@_arg_tl
1795 \tl_clear :N \l_@@_this_font_tl
```

```
\int_compare :nT { \clist_count :N \l_@@_arg_tl = 1 }
                                                           1796
                                                           1798 (*debug)
                                                                              \typeout{FontFace parsing : one clist item}
                                                           1800 (/debug)
                                                           1801
                                                                              \tl_if_in :NnF \l_@@_arg_tl {=}
                                                           1802
                                                           1803 (*debug)
                                                                                   \typeout{FontFace parsing : no equals => font name only}
                                                           1804
                                                           1805 (/debug)
                                                                                   \t = \NN \l_@e_this_font_tl \l_@e_arg_tl
                                                           1806
                                                                                   \tl_clear :N \l_@@_this_feat_tl
                                                           1807
                                                           1808
                                                                                 }
                                                           1809
                                                           1810
                                                                         \@@_add_nfssfont :oooo
                                                           1811
                                                                           {\begin{array}{c} \{ use_i : nnn \ \#1 \} \} \{ use_i : nnn \ \#1 \} \{ use_i : nnn \ \#1 \}
                                                           1812
                                                           1813 }
\@@_add_nfssfont :nnnn #1 : series
                                                              #2 : shape
                                                              #3 : fontname
                                                              #4: fontspec features
                                                           1814 \cs_new : Nn \@@_add_nfssfont :nnnn
                                                           1815 {
                                                           1816
                                                                        \tl_set :Nx \l_@@_this_font_tl {#3}
                                                           1817
                                                           1818
                                                                         \tl_if_empty :xTF {#4}
                                                                          { \clist_set :Nn \l_@@_sizefeat_clist {Size={-}} }
                                                           1819
                                                                          { \keys_set_known :noN {fontspec-preparse-nested} {#4} \l_@@_tmp_tl }
                                                           1820
                                                           1821
                                                                         \tl_if_empty :NF \l_@@_this_font_tl
                                                           1822
                                                                              \prop_put : Nxx \l_@Q_nfssfont_prop {#1/#2}
                                                           1825
                                                                                 { {#1}{#2}{\l_@@_this_font_tl}{#4}{\l_@@_sizefeat_clist} }
                                                           1826
                                                           1827 }
                                                           1828 \cs_generate_variant :Nn \@@_add_nfssfont :nnnn {ooo}
                                                           1829 \cs_generate_variant :Nn \@@_add_nfssfont :nnnn {oooo}
                                                              Scale If the input isn't one of the pre-defined string options, then it's gotta be numerical.
                                                             \fontspec_calc_scale:n does all the work in the auto-scaling cases.
                                                           1830 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {Scale}
                                                           1831 {
                                                                        \str_case :nnF {#1}
                                                           1832
                                                           1833
                                                                          {
                                                           1834
                                                                              {MatchLowercase} { \@@_calc_scale :n {5} }
                                                           1835
                                                                              {MatchUppercase} { \@@_calc_scale :n {8} }
                                                           1836
                                                           1837
                                                                           { \tl_set :Nx \l_@@_scale_tl {#1} }
                                                                         \tl_set :Nx \l_@@_scale_tl { s*[\l_@@_scale_tl] }
```

```
1839 }
```

\@@\_calc\_scale :n This macro calculates the amount of scaling between the default roman font and the (default shape of) the font being selected such that the font dimension that is input is equal for both. The only font dimensions that justify this are 5 (lowercase height) and 8 (uppercase height in XATEX).

This script is executed for every extra shape, which seems wasteful, but allows alternate italic shapes from a separate font, say, to be loaded and to be auto-scaled correctly. Even if this would be ugly.

```
1840 \cs_new :Nn \@@_calc_scale :n
1841 {
1842
     \group_begin :
1843
       \rmfamily
1844
       \ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\sc NnN \l_@Q_tmpa_dim \{\#1\} \loghtwidth}}} \
       1846
       \tl_gset :Nx \l_@@_scale_tl
1847
1848
          fp_eval :n { \dim_to_fp :n {\l_@@_tmpa_dim} / \label{fp_eval} }
                       \dim_{to_fp} :n {\l_@@_tmpb_dim} }
       \@@_info :n {set-scale}
1851
1852
     \group_end :
1853 }
```

\@@\_set\_font\_dimen :NnN

This function sets the dimension #1 (for font #3) to 'fontdimen' #2 for either font dimension 5 (x-height) or 8 (cap-height). If, for some reason, these return an incorrect 'zero' value (as \fontdimen8 might for a .tfm font), then we cheat and measure the height of a glyph. We assume in this case that the font contains either an 'X' or an 'X'.

```
1854 \cs_new : Nn \@@_set_font_dimen : NnN
1855 {
1856
      \dim_set :Nn #1 { \fontdimen #2 #3 }
1857
      \dim_{compare} : nNnT #1 = {0pt}
1858
1859
        \settoheight #1
1860
          \str_if_eq :nnTF {#3} {\font} \rmfamily #3
1861
          \int_case :nnn #2
1862
1863
              \{5\} \{x\} % x-height
1864
1865
              {8} {X} % cap-height
1866
           } { ?} % "else" clause; never reached.
1867
1868
1869 }
```

**Inter-word space** These options set the relevant \fontdimens for the font being loaded.

```
1870 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {WordSpace}
1871 {
1872 \bool_if :NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool
1873 { \_fontspec_parse_wordspace :w #1,,,\q_stop }
1874 }
```

\\_fontspec\_parse\_wordspace :w This macro determines if the input to WordSpace is of the form  $\{X\}$  or  $\{X,Y,Z\}$  and executes the font scaling. If the former input, it executes  $\{X,X,X\}$ .

```
1875 \cs_set :Npn \_fontspec_parse_wordspace :w #1,#2,#3,#4 \q_stop
1876 {
1877
     \tl_if_empty :nTF {#4}
1878
1879
       \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_wordspace_adjust_tl
1880
1881
          \fontdimen 2 \font = #1 \fontdimen 2 \font
1882
          \fontdimen 3 \font = #1 \fontdimen 3 \font
1883
          \fontdimen 4 \font = #1 \fontdimen 4 \font
1885
1886
1887
       \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_wordspace_adjust_tl
1888
          \fontdimen 2 \font = #1 \fontdimen 2 \font
1889
          \fontdimen 3 \font = #2 \fontdimen 3 \font
1890
1891
          \fontdimen 4 \font = #3 \fontdimen 4 \font
1892
1893
1894 }
```

# **Punctuation space** Scaling factor for the nominal \fontdimen#7.

```
1895 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {PunctuationSpace}
1896 {
1897
     \str_case_x :nnF {#1}
1898
1899
        {WordSpace}
1900
1901
         \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_punctspace_adjust_tl
          { \fontdimen 7 \font = 0 \fontdimen 2 \font }
1902
1903
       {TwiceWordSpace}
1904
1905
         \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_punctspace_adjust_tl
1906
          { \fontdimen 7 \font = 1 \fontdimen 2 \font }
1907
1908
1909
1910
         tl_set : Nn \l_@@_punctspace_adjust_tl
1911
1912
         { \fontdimen 7 \font = #1 \fontdimen 7 \font }
1914 }
```

## Secret hook into the font-adjustment code

```
1915 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {FontAdjustment}
1916 {
1917 \tl_put_right :Nx \l_@@_postadjust_tl {#1}
1918 }
```

### Letterspacing

```
1919 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {LetterSpace}
1920 {
1921 \@@_update_featstr :n {letterspace=#1}
1922 }
```

**Hyphenation character** This feature takes one of three arguments : 'None',  $\langle glyph \rangle$ , or  $\langle slot \rangle$ . If the input isn't the first, and it's one character, then it's the second; otherwise, it's the third.

```
1923 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {HyphenChar}
1925
     \str_if_eq :nnTF {#1} {None}
1926
        \tl_put_right :Nn \l_@@_postadjust_tl
1927
          { \hyphenchar \font = \c_minus_one }
1928
1929
        \tl_if_single :nTF {#1}
        { \tl_set :Nn \l_fontspec_hyphenchar_tl {'#1} }
        { \tl_set :Nn \l_fontspec_hyphenchar_tl { #1} }
1933
       \font_glyph_if_exist :NnTF \l_fontspec_font {\l_fontspec_hyphenchar_tl}
1934
1935
1936
         \tl_put_right :Nn \l_@@_postadjust_tl
1937 (*xetexx)
1938
            { \hyphenchar \font = \l_fontspec_hyphenchar_tl \scan_stop : }
1939 \langle /xetexx \rangle
1940 (*luatex)
1941
              \h
              \int_set :Nn \luatex_prehyphenchar :D { \l_fontspec_hyphenchar_tl }
1943
1944
1945 (/luatex)
1946
1947
        { \@@_error :nx {no-glyph}{#1} }
1948
1949 }
```

**Color** Hooks into pkgxcolor, which names its colours \color@<name>.

```
1950 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {Color}
1951 {
1952
      \cs_if_exist :cTF { \token_to_str :N \color@ #1 }
1953
1954
        \verb|\convertcolorspec{named}{\#1}{HTML}\\ \verb|\l_@@_hexcol_tl|\\
1956
        \int_compare :nTF { \tl_count :n \{#1\} == 6 }
1957
1958
         { \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_hexcol_tl {#1} }
1959
          \int_compare :nTF { \tl_count :n {#1} == 8 }
1960
           { \fontspec_parse_colour :viii #1 }
1961
1962
           {
```

```
\verb|\bool_if : NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool|
1963
1964
             { \@@_warning :nx {bad-colour} {#1} }
1965
1966
1967
1968 }
1969 \cs_set :Npn \fontspec_parse_colour :viii #1#2#3#4#5#6#7#8
1970 {
1971
     \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_hexcol_tl {#1#2#3#4#5#6}
     tl_if_eq : NNF \l_@@\_opacity_tl \g_@@\_opacity_tl
1972
1973
       \bool_if :NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool
1974
1975
        { \@@_warning :nx {opa-twice-col} {#7#8} }
1976
1977
     \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_opacity_tl {#7#8}
1978 }
1979 \aliasfontfeature{Color}{Colour}
1980 \int_new : N \l_@@_tmp_int
1981 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {Opacity}
1982 {
1983
     \int ... \cdot 1_{00_{tmp_int}} \{255\}
     \@@_int_mult_truncate :Nn \l_@@_tmp_int { #1 }
1984
      \tl_if_eq :NNF \l_@@_opacity_tl \g_@@_opacity_tl
1985
1986
        \bool_if :NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool
1987
1988
        { \@@_warning :nx {opa-twice} {#1} }
1989
1990
      tl_set : Nx \l_@@_opacity_tl
1991
1992
         \int_compare : nT {    \l_@@_tmp_int <= "F } {0} % zero pad
1993
         \int_to_hexadecimal :n { \l_@@_tmp_int }
1994
1995 }
Mapping
1996 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {Mapping}
1997 (*xetexx)
1998 {
1999
     \@@_update_featstr :n { mapping = #1 }
2000 }
2001 (/xetexx)
2002 (*luatex)
2003 {
2004
     \str_if_eq : nnTF {#1} {tex-text}
2005
2006
        \@@_warning :n {no-mapping-ligtex}
       \msg_redirect_name :nnn {fontspec} {no-mapping-ligtex} {none}
2007
       \keys_set :nn {fontspec} { Ligatures=TeX }
2008
2009
2010
      { \@@_warning :n {no-mapping} }
2011 }
```

```
2012 \langle /luatex \rangle
```

#### **FeatureFile**

```
2013 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {FeatureFile}
2014 {
2015 \@@_update_featstr :n { featurefile = #1 }
2016 }
```

#### 23.6.5 Continuous font axes

```
2017 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {Weight}
2019 \@@_update_featstr :n{weight=#1}
2020 }
2021 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {Width}
2022 {
    \@@_update_featstr :n{width=#1}
2023
2024 }
2025 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {OpticalSize}
2026 (*xetexx)
2027 {
     \bool_if :NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
2028
2029
2030
       tl_set : Nn \l_@@_optical_size_tl {/ S = #1}
      }
2031
2032
2033
       \bool_if :NT \l_@@_mm_bool
2034
          \@@_update_featstr :n { optical size = #1 }
2036
2037
      }
      \bool_if :nT { !\l_@@_ot_bool && !\l_@@_mm_bool }
2038
2039
       \bool_if :NT \l_@@_firsttime_bool
2040
2041
         { \@@_warning :n {no-opticals} }
2042
2043 }
2044 (/xetexx)
2045 (*luatex)
    tl_set :Nn l_@@_optical_size_tl {/ S = #1}
2047
2048 }
2049 (/luatex)
```

### 23.6.6 Font transformations

These are to be specified to apply directly to a font shape:

```
2050 \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
2051 {
2052  FakeSlant .code :n =
2053   {
2054  \@@_update_featstr :n{slant=#1}
```

```
2055
2056
     FakeSlant .default :n = \{0.2\}
2057 }
2058 \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
2059 {
2060
     FakeStretch .code :n =
2061
2062
        \@@_update_featstr :n{extend=#1}
2063
2064
     FakeStretch .default :n = {1.2}
2065 }
2066 (*xetexx)
2067 \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
2069
     FakeBold .code :n =
2070
        \@@_update_featstr :n {embolden=#1}
2071
2072
      },
     FakeBold .default :n = \{1.5\}
2074 }
2075 \langle /xetexx \rangle
2076 (*luatex)
2077 \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
2079 FakeBold .code :n = { \@@_warning :n {fakebold-only-xetex} }
2080 }
2081 (/luatex)
```

These are to be given to a shape that has no real bold/italic to signal that fontspec should automatically create 'fake' shapes.

The behaviour is currently that only if both AutoFakeSlant *and* AutoFakeBold are specified, the bold italic is also faked.

These features presently *override* real shapes found in the font; in the future I'd like these features to be ignored in this case, instead. (This is just a bit harder to program in the current design of fontspec.)

```
2082 \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
2083 {
2084
     AutoFakeSlant .code :n =
2085
       \bool_if :NT \l_@@_firsttime_bool
2086
2087
          \tl_set :Nn \l_fontspec_fake_slant_tl {#1}
          \clist_put_right :Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_it_clist {FakeSlant=#1}
2089
2090
          \tl_set_eq :NN \l_fontspec_fontname_it_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
2091
          \bool_set_false :N \l_@@_noit_bool
2092
2093
          \tl_if_empty :NF \l_fontspec_fake_embolden_tl
2094
            \clist_put_right :Nx \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist
             {FakeBold=\l_fontspec_fake_embolden_tl}
            \clist_put_right :Nx \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist {FakeSlant=#1}
            \verb|\tl_set_eq : NN \l_fontspec_fontname_bfit_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl|\\
2098
```

```
2099
     AutoFakeSlant .default :n = {0.2}
 Same but reversed:
2104 \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
2105 {
2106
     AutoFakeBold .code :n =
      {
       \bool_if :NT \l_@@_firsttime_bool
2109
          \tl_set :Nn \l_fontspec_fake_embolden_tl {#1}
          \clist_put_right :Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_bf_clist {FakeBold=#1}
          \tl_set_eq :NN \l_fontspec_fontname_bf_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
          \bool_set_false :N \l_@@_nobf_bool
2114
          \tl_if_empty :NF \l_fontspec_fake_slant_tl
            \clist_put_right :Nx \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist
            {FakeSlant=\l_fontspec_fake_slant_tl}
2118
2119
            \clist_put_right :Nx \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist {FakeBold=#1}
           \tl_set_eq :NN \l_fontspec_fontname_bfit_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
2124
     AutoFakeBold .default :n = \{1.5\}
```

## 23.6.7 Ligatures

The call to the nested keyval family must be wrapped in braces to hide the parent list (this later requires the use of global definitions (\xdef) in [...]). Both AAT and OpenType names are offered to chose Rare/Discretionary ligatures.

```
2126 \@@_define_font_feature :n{Ligatures}
2127 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{Required}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                        {1}{0}{+rlig}
2128 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoRequired}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                        {1}{1}{-rlig}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                       {1}{2}{+liga}
2129 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{Common}
{\tt 2130 \ensuremath{ \ensuremath{ \ensuremath{\mathsf{NoCommon}}}} \\ {\tt 1130 \ensuremath{ \ensuremath{ \ensuremath{\mathsf{NoCommon}}}} \\ {\tt 1130 \ensuremath{ \ensuremath{\mathsf{NoCommon}}}} \\ {\tt 1130 \ensuremath{ \ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{NoCommon}}}}} \\ {\tt 1130 \ensuremath{ \ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{NoCommon}}}}} \\ {\tt 1130 \ensuremath{ \ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{NoCommon}}}}} \\ {\tt 1130 \ensuremath{ \ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{NoCommon}}}}}} \\ {\tt 1130 \ensuremath{ \ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{NoCommon}}}}}} \\ {\tt 1130 \ensuremath{ \ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{NoCommon}}}}}}} \\ {\tt 1130 \ensuremath{ \ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{NoCommon}}}}}} \\ {\tt 1130 \ensuremath{ \ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{NoCommon}}}}}}} \\ {\tt 1130 \ensuremath{ \ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ensuremath{\mathsf{\ens
                                                                                                                                                                                                                        {1}{3}{-liga}
2131 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{Rare}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                        {1}{4}{+dlig}
2132 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoRare}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                        {1}{5}{-dlig}
2133 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{Discretionary}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                      {1}{4}{+dlig}
2134 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoDiscretionary}{1}{5}{-dlig}
2135 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{Contextual}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                        {}{} {+clig}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                       {}{} {-clig}
2136 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoContextual}
2137 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{Historic}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                        {}{} {+hlig}
2138 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoHistoric}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                       {}{} {-hlig}
2139 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{Logos}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                        {1}{6} {}
2140 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoLogos}
2141 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{Rebus}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                        {1}{8} {}
2142 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoRebus}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                        {1}{9} {}
```

```
2143 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{Diphthong}
                                                                  {1}{10}{}
2144 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoDiphthong}
2145 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{Squared}
                                                                  {1}{12}{}
2146 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoSquared}
2147 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{AbbrevSquared}
                                                                  {1}{14}{}
2148 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoAbbrevSquared}{1}{15}{}
2149 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{Icelandic}
2150 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoIcelandic}
 Emulate CM extra ligatures.
2151 \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
2152 {
2153 Ligatures / TeX .code :n =
2154
     {
2155 (*xetexx)
       \@@_update_featstr :n { mapping = tex-text }
2157 (/xetexx)
2158 (*luatex)
       \@@_update_featstr :n { +tlig; +trep }
2160 (/luatex)
2162 }
```

#### **23.6.8** Letters

```
2163 \@@_define_font_feature :n{Letters}
2164 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Letters}{Normal}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           {3}{0}{}
2165 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Letters}{Uppercase}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           {3}{1}{+case}
2166 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Letters}{Lowercase}
2167 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Letters}{SmallCaps}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           {3}{3}{+smcp}
2168 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Letters}{PetiteCaps}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           {} {} {+pcap}
2169 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Letters}{UppercaseSmallCaps} {} {} {+c2sc}
 2170 \ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}} \ensuremath{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}} \ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}} \ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim
2171 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Letters}{InitialCaps}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           {3}{4}{}
2172 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Letters}{Unicase}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           {} {} {+unic}
2173 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Letters}{Random}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           {} {} {+rand}
```

# 23.6.9 Numbers

These were originally separated into NumberCase and NumberSpacing following AAT, but it makes more sense to combine them.

Both naming conventions are offered to select the number case.

```
 2174 \ensurement \ensuremen
```

luaotload provides a custom anum feature for replacing Latin (AKA Arabic) numbers with Arabic (AKA Indic-Arabic). The same feature maps to Farsi (Persian) numbers if font

```
language is Farsi.
2183 \luatex_if_engine :T
2184 {
                     \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Numbers}{Arabic}{}{}{+anum}
2185
2186 }
     23.6.10 Contextuals
2187 \@@_define_font_feature :n {Contextuals}
2188 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Contextuals}{Swash}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         {} {} {+cswh}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        {} {} {-cswh}
{} {} {+calt}
2190 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Contextuals}{Alternate}
2191 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Contextuals}{NoAlternate}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       {} {} {-calt}
2192 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Contextuals}{WordInitial}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       {8}{0}{+init}
 2193 \\ \end{Monotonian} \\ \en
2194 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Contextuals}{WordFinal}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         {8}{2}{+fina}
2195 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Contextuals}{NoWordFinal}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        {8}{3}{-fina}
2196 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Contextuals}{LineInitial}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       {8}{4}{}
2197 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Contextuals}{NoLineInitial}{8}{5}{}
2198 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Contextuals}{LineFinal}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         {8}{6}{+falt}
2199 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Contextuals}{NoLineFinal}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       {8}{7}{-falt}
2200 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Contextuals}{Inner}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         {8}{8}{+medi}
2201 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Contextuals}{NoInner}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         \{8\}\{9\}\{-medi\}
     23.6.11 Diacritics
2202 \@@_define_font_feature :n{Diacritics}
2203 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Diacritics}{Show}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                {9}{0}{}
2204 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Diacritics}{Hide}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               {9}{1}{}
2205 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Diacritics}{Decompose}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               {9}{2}{}
2206 \ensuremath{\mbox{$\backslash$}} \ensuremath{\mbox{$\backslash$}}
{\tt 2207 \endown} \begin{tabular}{l} 2207 \endown \en
2208 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Diacritics}{MarkToMark} {}{}{+mkmk}
2209 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Diacritics}{NoMarkToMark}{}{}{-mkmk}
2210 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Diacritics}{AboveBase}
2211 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Diacritics}{NoAboveBase} { } { } { } { } -abvm}
2212 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Diacritics}{BelowBase}
2213 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Diacritics}{NoBelowBase} {}{}{-blwm}
     23.6.12 Kerning
2214 \@@_define_font_feature :n{Kerning}
2215 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Kerning}{Uppercase}{}{}{+cpsp}
2216 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Kerning}{On}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     {}{}{+kern}
2217 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Kerning}{Off}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     {}{}{-kern}
2218 %\@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Kerning}{Vertical}{}{}+vkrn}
2219 %\@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Kerning}
                                    {VerticalAlternateProportional}{}{}+vpal}
2221 \% (@\_define\_feature\_option:nnnnn{Kerning}{VerticalAlternateHalfWidth}{}{}{+vhal}) = (A_1 + A_2 + A_3 + A_4 
     23.6.13 Vertical position
2222 \@@_define_font_feature :n{VerticalPosition}
```

{10}{0}{}

2223 \@@\_define\_feature\_option :nnnnn{VerticalPosition}{Normal}

```
2224 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{VerticalPosition}{Superior} {10}{1}{+sups}
2225 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{VerticalPosition}{Inferior} {10}{2}{+subs}
2226 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{VerticalPosition}{Ordinal} {10}{3}{+ordn}
2227 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{VerticalPosition}{Numerator} {} {} {+numr}
2228 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{VerticalPosition}{Denominator}{} {} {+dnom}
2229 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{VerticalPosition}{ScientificInferior}{}{}+sinf}
```

#### **23.6.14** Fractions

```
2230 \@@_define_font_feature :n{Fractions}

2231 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Fractions}{0n} {11}{1}{+frac}

2232 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Fractions}{0ff} {11}{0}{-frac}

2233 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Fractions}{Diagonal} {11}{2}{}

2234 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Fractions}{Alternate}{} {} {+afrc}
```

#### 23.6.15 Alternates and variants

Selected numerically because they don't have standard names. Very easy to process, very annoying for the user!

```
2235 \@@_define_font_feature :n { Alternate }
2236 \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
2238 Alternate .default :n = \{0\},
2239
    Alternate / unknown .code :n =
2241
       \clist_map_inline :nn {#1}
2242
         { fontspec_make_feature : nnx {17}{##1} { <math>fontspec_salt : n {##1} } }
2243
2244 }
2245\cs_set :Nn \fontspec_salt :n { +salt = #1 }
2246 \@@_define_font_feature :n {Variant}
2247 \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
2248 {
2249 Variant .default :n = \{0\},
2250 Variant / unknown .code :n =
      \clist_map_inline :nn {#1}
          { \fontspec_make_feature :nnx {18}{##1} { +ss \two@digits {##1} } }
2254
2255 }
2256 \aliasfontfeature{Variant}{StylisticSet}
2257 \@@_define_font_feature :n { CharacterVariant }
2258 \use : x
2259 {
     \cs_new :Npn \exp_not :N \fontspec_parse_cv :w
         ##1 \c_colon_str ##2 \c_colon_str ##3 \exp_not :N \q_nil
2262
        \fontspec_make_numbered_feature :xn
           { +cv \exp_not :N \two@digits {##1} } {##2}
2264
2265
2266
     \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
2267
```

```
\clist_map_inline :nn {##1}
                      \exp_not :N \fontspec_parse_cv :w
                          ####1 \c_colon_str 0 \c_colon_str \exp_not :N \q_nil
2275
2276
2277 }
  Possibilities: a:0:\q_nil or a:b:0:\q_nil.
 23.6.16 Style
2278 \@@_define_font_feature :n{Style}
2279 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Style}{Alternate}
                                                                                                                 {} {} {+salt}
2280 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Style}{Italic}
                                                                                                                  {32}{2}{+ital}
2281 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Style}{Ruby}
                                                                                                                  {28}{2}{+ruby}
2282 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Style}{Swash}
                                                                                                                 {} {} {+swsh}
2283 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Style}{Historic}
                                                                                                                 {} {} {+hist}
2284 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Style}{Display}
                                                                                                                  {19}{1}{}
2285 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Style}{Engraved}
                                                                                                                  {19}{2}{}
2286 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Style}{TitlingCaps}
                                                                                                                 {19}{4}{+titl}
2287 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Style}{TallCaps}
                                                                                                                  {19}{5}{}
2288 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Style}{HorizontalKana}{} {} {} {+hkna}
2289 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Style}{VerticalKana} {} {} {+vkna}
2290 \fontspec_define_numbered_feat :nnnn {Style} {MathScript}
2291\fontspec_define_numbered_feat :nnnn {Style} {MathScriptScript} {+ssty} {1}
  23.6.17 CJK shape
2292 \@@_define_font_feature :n{CJKShape}
 2293 \end{center} $$ 1293 \end{center} Traditional $$ 20$ $$ $$ + trad $$ 2293 \end{center} $$ 1293 \end{center
2294 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{CJKShape}{Simplified} {20}{1} {+smpl}
2295 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{CJKShape}{JIS1978}
                                                                                                                  {20}{2} {+jp78}
2296 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{CJKShape}{JIS1983}
                                                                                                                  {20}{3} {+jp83}
2297 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{CJKShape}{JIS1990}
                                                                                                                  {20}{4} {+jp90}
2298 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{CJKShape}{Expert}
                                                                                                                  {20}{10}{+expt}
2299 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{CJKShape}{NLC}
                                                                                                                 {20}{13}{+nlck}
  23.6.18 Character width
2300 \@@_define_font_feature :n{CharacterWidth}
2301 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{CharacterWidth}{Proportional}{22}{0}{+pwid}
2302 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{CharacterWidth}{Full}{22}{1}{+fwid}
2303 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{CharacterWidth}{Half}{22}{2}{+hwid}
2304 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{CharacterWidth}{Third}{22}{3}{+twid}
2305 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{CharacterWidth}{Quarter}{22}{4}{+gwid}
2306 \ensuremath{\ensuremath{\mbox{Quefine\_feature\_option}:nnnnn{CharacterWidth}{AlternateProportional}{22}{5}{+palt}}
```

CharacterVariant / unknown .code :n =

## 23.6.19 Annotation

2307 \@@\_define\_feature\_option :nnnnn{CharacterWidth}{AlternateHalf}{22}{6}{+halt}

2308 \@@\_define\_feature\_option :nnnnn{CharacterWidth}{Default}{22}{7}{}

```
 2309 \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc 0ff}{24}{0}{}} \\
2310 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Annotation}{Box}{24}{1}{}
2311 \ensuremath{\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$1$}}}} \ensuremath{\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$2$}}}} \ensuremath{\mbox{\mbox{$2$}}} \ensuremath{\mbox{\mbox{$2$}}} \ensuremath{\mbox{$2$}} \ensu
2312 \ensuremath{\verb|@Q_define_feature_option|}$ : nnnnn{Annotation}{Circle}{24}{3}{}
2313 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Annotation}{BlackCircle}{24}{4}{}
2314 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Annotation}{Parenthesis}{24}{5}{}
2315 \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc Q_define\_feature\_option}} : nnnnn{Annotation}{\ensuremath{\mbox{\sc Period}}{\sc 24}{\sc 6}{\sc }}
 2316 \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc QQ\_define\_feature\_option :nnnnn{Annotation}{RomanNumerals}{24}{7}{}} } 
2317 \ensuremath{\verb|@Q_define_feature_option|} : nnnnn{Annotation}{Diamond}{24}{8}{}
2318 \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc Quare}} \{24\} \{9\} \{\}
2320 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Annotation}{DoubleCircle}{24}{11}{}
2321 \@@_define_font_feature :n { Annotation }
2322 \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
2323 {
2324
          Annotation .default :n = \{0\} ,
           Annotation / unknown .code :n =  
2327
               \fontspec_make_feature :nnx {}{}{ +nalt=#1 }
2328
             }
2329 }
  23.6.20 Vertical
2330 \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
2331 {
          Vertical .choice : ,
           Vertical / RotatedGlyphs .code :n =
2334
2335
               \bool_if :NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
2336
                   \fontspec_make_feature :nnn{}{}+vrt2}
2338
                   \@@_update_featstr :n {vertical}
2339
2340
                   \@@_update_featstr :n {vertical}
2343
2344 }
  23.6.21 Script
2345 \newfontscript{Arabic}{arab}
                                                                                         \newfontscript{Armenian}{armn}
2346 \newfontscript{Balinese}{bali}
                                                                                         \newfontscript{Bengali}{beng}
2347 \newfontscript{Bopomofo}{bopo}
                                                                                         \newfontscript{Braille}{brai}
                                                                                         \newfontscript{Buhid}{buhd}
2348 \newfontscript{Buginese}{bugi}
2349 \newfontscript{Byzantine~Music}{byzm}
2350 \newfontscript{Canadian Syllabics}{cans}
2351 \newfontscript{Cherokee}{cher}
2352 \newfontscript{CJK~Ideographic}{hani}
                                                                                         \newfontscript{Coptic}{copt}
2353 \newfontscript{Cypriot~Syllabary}{cprt} \newfontscript{Cyrillic}{cyrl}
2354 \newfontscript{Default}{DFLT}
                                                                                          \newfontscript{Deseret}{dsrt}
2355 \newfontscript{Devanagari}{deva}
                                                                                         \newfontscript{Ethiopic}{ethi}
```

```
\newfontscript{Glagolitic}{glag}
2356 \newfontscript{Georgian}{geor}
2357 \newfontscript{Gothic}{goth}
                                          \newfontscript{Greek}{grek}
2358 \newfontscript{Gujarati}{gujr}
                                          \newfontscript{Gurmukhi}{guru}
2359 \newfontscript{Hangul~Jamo}{jamo}
                                          \newfontscript{Hangul}{hang}
2360 \newfontscript{Hanunoo}{hano}
                                          \newfontscript{Hebrew}{hebr}
2361 \newfontscript{Hiragana~and~Katakana}{kana}
2362 \newfontscript{Javanese}{java}
                                          \newfontscript{Kannada}{knda}
2363 \newfontscript{Kharosthi}{khar}
                                          \newfontscript{Khmer}{khmr}
2364 \newfontscript{Lao}{lao~}
                                          \newfontscript{Latin}{latn}
2365 \newfontscript{Limbu}{limb}
                                          \newfontscript{Linear~B}{linb}
2366 \newfontscript{Malayalam}{mlym}
                                          \newfontscript{Math}{math}
2367 \newfontscript{Mongolian}{mong}
2368 \newfontscript{Musical~Symbols}{musc}
                                          \newfontscript{Myanmar}{mymr}
2369 \newfontscript{N'ko}{nko^}
                                          \newfontscript{Ogham}{ogam}
2370 \newfontscript{Old~Italic}{ital}
2371 \newfontscript{Old~Persian~Cuneiform}{xpeo}
2372 \newfontscript{Oriya}{orya}
                                          \newfontscript{Osmanya}{osma}
2373 \newfontscript{Phags-pa}{phag}
                                          \newfontscript{Phoenician}{phnx}
2374 \newfontscript{Runic}{runr}
                                          \newfontscript{Shavian}{shaw}
2375 \newfontscript{Sinhala}{sinh}
2376 \newfontscript{Sumero-Akkadian~Cuneiform}{xsux}
2377 \newfontscript{Syloti~Nagri}{sylo}
                                          \newfontscript{Syriac}{syrc}
2378 \newfontscript{Tagalog}{tglg}
                                          \newfontscript{Tagbanwa}{tagb}
2379 \newfontscript{Tai~Le}{tale}
                                          \newfontscript{Tai~Lu}{talu}
2380 \newfontscript{Tamil}{taml}
                                          \newfontscript{Telugu}{telu}
2381 \newfontscript{Thaana}{thaa}
                                          \newfontscript{Thai}{thai}
2382 \newfontscript{Tibetan}{tibt}
                                          \newfontscript{Tifinagh}{tfng}
2383 \newfontscript{Ugaritic~Cuneiform}{ugar}\newfontscript{Yi}{yi~~}
 For convenience:
2384 \newfontscript{Kana}{kana}
2385 \newfontscript{Maths}{math}
2386 \newfontscript{CJK}{hani}
 23.6.22 Language
2387 \newfontlanguage{Abaza}{ABA}\newfontlanguage{Abkhazian}{ABK}
2388 \newfontlanguage \{Adyghe\} \{ADY\} \newfontlanguage \{Afrikaans\} \{AFK\} \}
2389 \newfontlanguage{Afar}{AFR} \newfontlanguage{Agaw}{AGW}
2392 \newfontlanguage{Arakanese}{ARK}\newfontlanguage{Assamese}{ASM}
2393 \newfontlanguage{Athapaskan}{ATH}\newfontlanguage{Avar}{AVR}
2394 \newfontlanguage{Awadhi}{AWA}\newfontlanguage{Aymara}{AYM}
2395 \newfontlanguage{Azeri}{AZE}\newfontlanguage{Badaga}{BAD}
2396 \newfontlanguage{Baghelkhandi}{BAG}\newfontlanguage{Balkar}{BAL}
2397 \newfontlanguage{Baule}{BAU}\newfontlanguage{Berber}{BBR}
2398 \newfontlanguage{Bench}{BCH}\newfontlanguage{Bible~Cree}{BCR}
2400 \newfontlanguage\{Bengali\}\{BEN\} \newfontlanguage\{Bulgarian\}\{BGR\}\}
2401 \newfontlanguage{Bhili}{BHI}\newfontlanguage{Bhojpuri}{BHO}
2402 \newfontlanguage{Bikol}{BIK}\newfontlanguage{Bilen}{BIL}
2403 \newfontlanguage{Blackfoot}{BKF}\newfontlanguage{Balochi}{BLI}
```

```
2404 \newfontlanguage\{Balante\}\{BLN\} \newfontlanguage\{Balti\}\{BLT\}
2405 \newfontlanguage{Bambara}{BMB}\newfontlanguage{Bamileke}{BML}
2406 \newfontlanguage{Breton}{BRE}\newfontlanguage{Brahui}{BRH}
2408 \newfontlanguage{Bashkir}{BSH}\newfontlanguage{Beti}{BTI}
2409 \newfontlanguage{Catalan}{CAT}\newfontlanguage{Cebuano}{CEB}
2410 \newfontlanguage{Chechen}{CHE}\newfontlanguage{Chaha~Gurage}{CHG}
2411 \newfontlanguage{Chattisgarhi}{CHH}\newfontlanguage{Chichewa}{CHI}
2412 \newfontlanguage{Chukchi}{CHK}\newfontlanguage{Chipewyan}{CHP}
2413 \newfontlanguage{Cherokee}{CHR}\newfontlanguage{Chuvash}{CHU}
2414 \newfontlanguage{Comorian}{CMR}\newfontlanguage{Coptic}{COP}
2415 \newfontlanguage{Cree}{CRE}\newfontlanguage{Carrier}{CRR}
2416 \newfontlanguage{Crimean~Tatar}{CRT}\newfontlanguage{Church~Slavonic}{CSL}
2417 \newfontlanguage{Czech}{CSY}\newfontlanguage{Danish}{DAN}
2418 \newfontlanguage{Dargwa}{DAR}\newfontlanguage{Woods~Cree}{DCR}
2419 \newfontlanguage{German}{DEU}
2420 \newfontlanguage{Dogri}{DGR}\newfontlanguage{Divehi}{DIV}
2421 \newfontlanguage{Djerma}{DJR}\newfontlanguage{Dangme}{DNG}
2422 \newfontlanguage{Dinka}{DNK}\newfontlanguage{Dungan}{DUN}
{\tt 2424 \ newfontlanguage{Edo}{EDO}} \\
2425 \newfontlanguage{Efik}{EFI}\newfontlanguage{Greek}{ELL}
{\tt 2426 \ language \{English\}\{ENG\} \ language \{Erzya\}\{ERZ\}\}} \\
{\tt 2427 \ hewfontlanguage \{Spanish\} \{ESP\} \ hewfontlanguage \{Estonian\} \{ETI\} \}}
2428 \newfontlanguage{Basque}{EUQ}\newfontlanguage{Evenki}{EVK}
2429 \newfontlanguage{Even}{EVN}\newfontlanguage{Ewe}{EWE}
2430 \newfontlanguage{French~Antillean}{FAN}
2431 \newfontlanguage{Farsi}{FAR}
2432 \newfontlanguage{Parsi}{FAR}
2433 \newfontlanguage{Persian}{FAR}
2434 \newfontlanguage{Finnish}{FIN}\newfontlanguage{Fijian}{FJI}
2435 \newfontlanguage{Flemish}{FLE}\newfontlanguage{Forest~Nenets}{FNE}
2436 \newfontlanguage{Fon}{FON}\newfontlanguage{Faroese}{FOS}
2437 \newfontlanguage{French}{FRA}\newfontlanguage{Frisian}{FRI}
2438 \newfontlanguage{Friulian}{FRL}\newfontlanguage{Futa}{FTA}
2439 \newfontlanguage{Fulani}{FUL}\newfontlanguage{Ga}{GAD}
2440 \newfontlanguage{Gaelic}{GAE}\newfontlanguage{Gagauz}{GAG}
2441 \newfontlanguage{Galician}{GAL}\newfontlanguage{Garshuni}{GAR}
2442 \newfontlanguage \{Garhwali\} \{GAW\} \newfontlanguage \{Ge'ez\} \{GEZ\} \}
2444 \newfontlanguage \{Gondi\} \{GON\} \newfontlanguage \{Greenlandic\} \{GRN\} \}
2445 \newfontlanguage{Garo}{GRO}\newfontlanguage{Guarani}{GUA}
2446 \newfontlanguage{Gujarati}{GUJ}\newfontlanguage{Haitian}{HAI}
2447 \newfontlanguage{Halam}{HAL} \newfontlanguage{Harauti}{HAR}
2448 \newfontlanguage{Hausa}{HAU}\newfontlanguage{Hawaiin}{HAW}
2449 \newfontlanguage{Hammer-Banna}{HBN}\newfontlanguage{Hiligaynon}{HIL}
2450 \newfontlanguage{Hindi}{HIN}\newfontlanguage{High~Mari}{HMA}
2451 \newfontlanguage{Hindko}{HND}\newfontlanguage{Ho}{HO}
2452 \newfontlanguage{Harari}{HRI}\newfontlanguage{Croatian}{HRV}
2453 \newfontlanguage{Hungarian}{HUN}\newfontlanguage{Armenian}{HYE}
2454 \newfontlanguage{Igbo}{IBO}\newfontlanguage{Ijo}{IJO}
```

```
2455 \newfontlanguage{Ilokano}{ILO} \land language{Indonesian}{IND} \land language{Indonesia
2456 \newfontlanguage{Ingush}{ING}\newfontlanguage{Inuktitut}{INU}
2457 \newfontlanguage{Irish}{IRI}\newfontlanguage{Irish~Traditional}{IRT}
2458 \newfontlanguage{Icelandic} ISL\newfontlanguage{Inari~Sami} ISM) \\
2459 \newfontlanguage{Italian}{ITA}\newfontlanguage{Hebrew}{IWR}
2460 \newfontlanguage{Javanese}{JAV}\newfontlanguage{Yiddish}{JII}
2461 \newfontlanguage{Japanese}{JAN}\newfontlanguage{Judezmo}{JUD}
2462 \newfontlanguage{Jula}{JUL}\newfontlanguage{Kabardian}{KAB}
2463 \newfontlanguage{Kachchi}{KAC}\newfontlanguage{Kalenjin}{KAL}
2464 \newfontlanguage{Kannada}{KAN}\newfontlanguage{Karachay}{KAR}
2465 \newfontlanguage{Georgian}{KAT}\newfontlanguage{Kazakh}{KAZ}
2466 \newfontlanguage{Kebena}{KEB}\newfontlanguage{Khutsuri~Georgian}{KGE}
2467 \newfontlanguage{Khakass}{KHA}\newfontlanguage{Khanty-Kazim}{KHK}
2468 \newfontlanguage{Khmer}{KHM}\newfontlanguage{Khanty-Shurishkar}{KHS}
2469 \newfontlanguage{Khanty-Vakhi}{KHV}\newfontlanguage{Khowar}{KHW}
2470 \newfontlanguage{Kikuyu}{KIK}\newfontlanguage{Kirghiz}{KIR}
2471 \newfontlanguage{Kisii}{KIS}\newfontlanguage{Kokni}{KKN}
2472 \newfontlanguage{Kalmyk}{KLM}\newfontlanguage{Kamba}{KMB}
2473 \newfontlanguage{Kumaoni}{KMN}\newfontlanguage{Komo}{KMO}
2474 \newfontlanguage\{Komso\}\{KMS\} \newfontlanguage\{Kanuri\}\{KNR\}\}
2475 \newfontlanguage{Kodagu}{KOD}\newfontlanguage{Korean~Old~Hangul}{KOH}
2476 \newfontlanguage{Konkani}{KOK}\newfontlanguage{Kikongo}{KON}
2477 \newfontlanguage{Komi-Permyak}{KOP}\newfontlanguage{Korean}{KOR}
2478 \newfontlanguage\{Komi-Zyrian\}\{KOZ\} \newfontlanguage\{Kpelle\}\{KPL\}\} \newfontlanguage\{Kpelle\}\{KPL\} \newfontlanguage\{Kpelle\}\{KPL\}\} \newfontlanguage\{Kpel
2479 \newfontlanguage\{Krio\}\{KRI\} \newfontlanguage\{Karakalpak\}\{KRK\}\}
2480 \newfontlanguage{Karelian}{KRL}\newfontlanguage{Karaim}{KRM}
2481 \newfontlanguage{Karen}{KRN}\newfontlanguage{Koorete}{KRT}
2482 \newfontlanguage{Kashmiri}{KSH}\newfontlanguage{Khasi}{KSI}
2483 \newfontlanguage{Kildin~Sami}{KSM}\newfontlanguage{Kui}{KUI}
2484 \newfontlanguage{Kulvi}{KUL}\newfontlanguage{Kumyk}{KUM}
2486 \newfontlanguage{Kuy}{KUY}\newfontlanguage{Koryak}{KYK}
2487 \newfontlanguage{Ladin}{LAD}\newfontlanguage{Lahuli}{LAH}
2488 \newfontlanguage{Lak}{LAK}\newfontlanguage{Lambani}{LAM}
2489 \newfontlanguage{Lao}{LAO}\newfontlanguage{Latin}{LAT}
2490 \newfontlanguage{Laz}{LAZ}\newfontlanguage{L-Cree}{LCR}
2491 \newfontlanguage{Ladakhi}{LDK}\newfontlanguage{Lezgi}{LEZ}
2492 \newfontlanguage{Lingala}{LIN}\newfontlanguage{Low~Mari}{LMA}
2493 \newfontlanguage{Limbu}{LMB}\newfontlanguage{Lomwe}{LMW}
2494 \newfontlanguage{Lower~Sorbian}{LSB}\newfontlanguage{Lule~Sami}{LSM}
2496 \newfontlanguage{Luganda}{LUG}\newfontlanguage{Luhya}{LUH}
2497 \newfontlanguage{Luo}{LUO}\newfontlanguage{Latvian}{LVI}
2499 \newfontlanguage{Malayalam~Traditional}{MAL} \newfontlanguage{Mansi}{MAN} \\
2500 \newfontlanguage{Marathi}{MAR}\newfontlanguage{Marwari}{MAW}
2501 \newfontlanguage{Mbundu}{MBN}\newfontlanguage{Manchu}{MCH}
2502 \newfontlanguage{Moose~Cree}{MCR}\newfontlanguage{Mende}{MDE}
2503 \newfontlanguage{Me'en}{MEN}\newfontlanguage{Mizo}{MIZ}
2504 \newfontlanguage{Macedonian}{MKD}\newfontlanguage{Male}{MLE}
2505 \newfontlanguage{Malagasy}{MLG}\newfontlanguage{Malinke}{MLN}
```

```
2506 \newfontlanguage{Malayalam^Reformed}{MLR} \newfontlanguage{Malay}{MLY} \\
2507 \newfontlanguage{Mandinka}{MND}\newfontlanguage{Mongolian}{MNG}
2508 \newfontlanguage{Manipuri}{MNI}\newfontlanguage{Maninka}{MNK}
2509 \newfontlanguage\{Manx^Gaelic\}\{MNX\}\setminus \{MNX\} \}
2510 \newfontlanguage{Moldavian}{MOL}\newfontlanguage{Mon}{MON}
2511 \newfontlanguage{Moroccan}{MOR}\newfontlanguage{Maori}{MRI}
2512 \newfontlanguage{Maithili}{MTH}\newfontlanguage{Maltese}{MTS}
2514 \newfontlanguage{Nanai}{NAN}\newfontlanguage{Naskapi}{NAS}
2515 \newfontlanguage{N-Cree}{NCR}\newfontlanguage{Ndebele}{NDB}
2516 \newfontlanguage{Ndonga}{NDG} \newfontlanguage{Nepali}{NEP}
2517 \newfontlanguage{Newari}{NEW}\newfontlanguage{Nagari}{NGR}
2518 \newfontlanguage{Norway~House~Cree}{NHC}\newfontlanguage{Nisi}{NIS}
2519 \newfontlanguage{Niuean}{NIU}\newfontlanguage{Nkole}{NKL}
2520 \newfontlanguage{N'ko}{NKO}\newfontlanguage{Dutch}{NLD}
2521 \newfontlanguage{Nogai}{NOG}\newfontlanguage{Norwegian}{NOR}
2522 \newfontlanguage{Northern~Sami}{NSM}\newfontlanguage{Northern~Tai}{NTA}
2523 \newfontlanguage{Esperanto}{NTO}\newfontlanguage{Nynorsk}{NYN}
2524 \newfontlanguage{Oji-Cree}{OCR}\newfontlanguage{Ojibway}{OJB}
2526 \newfontlanguage {Ossetian} {OSS} \newfontlanguage {Palestinian}^A ramaic {PAA} \newfontlanguage {Palestinian}^A ramaic {PAA} \newfontlanguage {Palestinian}^A ramaic {PAA} \newfontlanguage {PAA} \new
2527 \newfontlanguage{Pali}{PAL}\newfontlanguage{Punjabi}{PAN}
2528 \newfontlanguage \{Palpa\}\{PAP\} \newfontlanguage \{Pashto\}\{PAS\}\} \\
2529 \newfontlanguage{Polytonic~Greek}{PGR}\newfontlanguage{Pilipino}{PIL}
2530 \newfontlanguage{Palaung}{PLG}\newfontlanguage{Polish}{PLK}
2531 \newfontlanguage{Provencal}{PRO}\newfontlanguage{Portuguese}{PTG}
2532 \newfontlanguage{Chin}{QIN}\newfontlanguage{Rajasthani}{RAJ}
2533 \newfontlanguage{R-Cree}{RCR}\newfontlanguage{Russian~Buriat}{RBU}
2534 \newfontlanguage{Riang}{RIA}\newfontlanguage{Rhaeto-Romanic}{RMS}
2535 \newfontlanguage{Romanian}{ROM}\newfontlanguage{Romany}{ROY}
2536 \newfontlanguage{Rusyn}{RSY}\newfontlanguage{Ruanda}{RUA}
2537 \newfontlanguage{Russian}{RUS}\newfontlanguage{Sadri}{SAD}
2538 \newfontlanguage{Sanskrit}{SAN}\newfontlanguage{Santali}{SAT}
2539 \newfontlanguage{Sayisi}{SAY}\newfontlanguage{Sekota}{SEK}
2540 \newfontlanguage{Selkup}{SEL}\newfontlanguage{Sango}{SGO}
2541 \newfontlanguage{Shan}{SHN}\newfontlanguage{Sibe}{SIB}
2542 \newfontlanguage{Sidamo}{SID}\newfontlanguage{Silte~Gurage}{SIG}
2543 \newfontlanguage{Skolt~Sami}{SKS}\newfontlanguage{Slovak}{SKY}
2544 \newfontlanguage{Slavey}{SLA}\newfontlanguage{Slovenian}{SLV}
2545 \newfontlanguage \{Somali\} \{SML\} \newfontlanguage \{Samoan\} \{SMO\} \} \\
2546 \newfontlanguage{Sena}{SNA} \newfontlanguage{Sindhi}{SND}
2547 \newfontlanguage{Sinhalese}{SNH}\newfontlanguage{Soninke}{SNK}
2548 \newfontlanguage{Sodo~Gurage}{SOG}\newfontlanguage{Sotho}{SOT}
2549 \newfontlanguage {Albanian} {SQI} \newfontlanguage {Serbian} {SRB} \\
2550 \newfontlanguage{Saraiki}{SRK}\newfontlanguage{Serer}{SRR}
2551 \newfontlanguage{South~Slavey}{SSL}\newfontlanguage{Southern~Sami}{SSM}
2552 \newfontlanguage{Suri}{SUR}\newfontlanguage{Svan}{SVA}
2553 \newfontlanguage{Swedish}{SVE}\newfontlanguage{Swadaya~Aramaic}{SWA}
2554\newfontlanguage{Swahili}{SWK}\newfontlanguage{Swazi}{SWZ}
2556 \newfontlanguage{Tabasaran}{TAB}\newfontlanguage{Tajiki}{TAJ}
```

```
2557 \newfontlanguage{Tamil}{TAM}\newfontlanguage{Tatar}{TAT}
2558 \newfontlanguage{TH-Cree}{TCR}\newfontlanguage{Telugu}{TEL}
2559 \newfontlanguage{Tongan}{TGN}\newfontlanguage{Tigre}{TGR}
2560 \newfontlanguage{Tigrinya}{TGY} \newfontlanguage{Thai}{THA}
2561 \newfontlanguage{Tahitian}{THT}\newfontlanguage{Tibetan}{TIB}
2562 \newfontlanguage{Turkmen}{TKM}\newfontlanguage{Temne}{TMN}
2563 \newfontlanguage{Tswana}{TNA}\newfontlanguage{Tundra~Nenets}{TNE}
2564 \newfontlanguage{Tonga}{TNG}\newfontlanguage{Todo}{TOD}
2565 \newfontlanguage{Tsonga}{TSG}\newfontlanguage{Turoyo~Aramaic}{TUA}
2566 \newfontlanguage{Tulu}{TUL}\newfontlanguage{Tuvin}{TUV}
2567 \newfontlanguage{Twi}{TWI}\newfontlanguage{Udmurt}{UDM}
2568 \newfontlanguage{Ukrainian}{UKR}\newfontlanguage{Urdu}{URD}
2569 \newfontlanguage{Upper~Sorbian}{USB}\newfontlanguage{Uyghur}{UYG}
2570 \newfontlanguage{Uzbek}{UZB}\newfontlanguage{Venda}{VEN}
2571 \newfontlanguage{Vietnamese}{VIT}\newfontlanguage{Wa}{WA}
2572 \newfontlanguage{Wagdi}{WAG}\newfontlanguage{West-Cree}{WCR}
2573 \newfontlanguage{Welsh}{WEL}\newfontlanguage{Wolof}{WLF}
2574 \newfontlanguage{Tai~Lue}{XBD}\newfontlanguage{Xhosa}{XHS}
2575 \newfontlanguage{Yakut}{YAK}\newfontlanguage{Yoruba}{YBA}
2577 \end{array} $$ \end{array} \end{array} $$ \operatorname{Chinese}^{\normalfarray} \end{array} $$ \end{array} $$\end{array} $$ \end{array} $$ \end{array} $$\end{ar
2578 \newfontlanguage{Chinese~Phonetic}{ZHP}
2579 \newfontlanguage{Chinese~Simplified}{ZHS}
2581 \newfontlanguage{Zulu}{ZUL}
  Turkish Turns out that many fonts use 'TUR' as their Turkish language tag rather than
```

the specified 'TRK'. So we check for both:

```
2582 \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
2583 {
2584
     Language / Turkish .code :n =
2585
       \fontspec_check_lang :nTF {TRK}
2586
2587
2588
          \int_set :Nn \l_fontspec_language_int {\l_fontspec_strnum_int}
          \tl_set :Nn \l_fontspec_lang_tl {TRK}
2589
         }
2590
2591
          \fontspec_check_lang :nTF {TUR}
2594
            \int_set :Nn \l_fontspec_language_int {\l_fontspec_strnum_int}
2595
            \tl_set :Nn \l_fontspec_lang_tl {TUR}
2596
2597
2598
            \@@_warning :nx {language-not-exist} {Turkish}
2599
            \keys_set :nn {fontspec} {Language=Default}
```

**Default** 

```
2604\@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec}{ Language / Default }
2605 {
2606
    \tl_set :Nn \l_fontspec_lang_tl {DFLT}
2607 \int_zero :N \l_fontspec_language_int
2608 }
```

### 23.6.23 Raw feature string

This allows savvy XqTpX-ers to input font features manually if they have already memorised the OpenType abbreviations and don't mind not having error checking.

```
2609 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {RawFeature}
2610 {
2611 \@@_update_featstr :n {#1}
2612 }
```

#### 23.7 Italic small caps

The following code for utilising italic small caps sensibly is inspired from Philip Lehman's The Font Installation Guide. Note that \upshape needs to be used twice to get from italic small caps to regular upright (it always goes to small caps, then regular upright).

\sishape First, the commands for actually selecting italic small caps are defined. I use si as the NFSS shape for italic small caps, but I have seen itsc and slsc also used. \sidefault may be \textsi redefined to one of these if required for compatibility.

```
2613 \providecommand*{\sidefault}{si}
2614 \DeclareRobustCommand{\sishape}
2615 {
2616 \not@math@alphabet\sishape\relax
2617 \fontshape\sidefault\selectfont
2619 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textsi}{\sishape}
```

\fontspec\_blend\_shape :nnn This is the macro which enables the overload on the \...shape commands. It takes three such arguments. In essence, the macro selects the first argument, unless the second argument is already selected, in which case it selects the third.

```
2620 \cs_new :Nn \fontspec_blend_shape :nnn
2621 {
    \bool_if :nTF
2622
    {
2624
       \str_if_eq_x_p : nn {\f@shape} {\#2} \&\&
      \cs_if_exist_p :c {\f@encoding/\f@family/\f@series/#3}
      { \fontshape{#3}\selectfont }
2627
      { \fontshape{#1}\selectfont }
2628
2629 }
```

\itshape Here the original \...shape commands are redefined to use the merge shape macro.

```
\sc hape \ 2630 \DeclareRobustCommand \itshape
\upshape _{2631} {
              \not@math@alphabet\itshape\mathit
              \fontspec_blend_shape :nnn\itdefault\scdefault\sidefault
         2634 }
```

```
2635 \DeclareRobustCommand \slshape
2636 {
2637 \not@math@alphabet\slshape\relax
2638 \fontspec_blend_shape :nnn\sldefault\scdefault\sidefault
2639 }
2640 \DeclareRobustCommand \scshape
2641 {
2642 \not@math@alphabet\scshape\relax
2643 \fontspec_blend_shape :nnn\scdefault\itdefault\sidefault
2644 }
2645 \DeclareRobustCommand \upshape
2646 {
2647 \not@math@alphabet\upshape\relax
2648 \fontspec_blend_shape :nnn\updefault\sidefault\scdefault
2649 }
```

## 23.8 Selecting maths fonts

Here, the fonts used in math mode are redefined to correspond to the default roman, sans serif and typewriter fonts. Unfortunately, you can only define maths fonts in the preamble, otherwise I'd run this code whenever \setmainfont and friends was run.

\fontspec\_setup\_maths :

Everything here is performed \AtBeginDocument in order to overwrite euler's attempt. This means fontspec must be loaded *after* euler. We set up a conditional to return an error if this rule is violated.

Since every maths setup is slightly different, we also take different paths for defining various math glyphs depending which maths font package has been loaded.

```
2650 \@ifpackageloaded{euler}
2651 {
     \bool_set_true :N \g_@@_pkg_euler_loaded_bool
2654 {
     \bool_set_false :N \g_@@_pkg_euler_loaded_bool
2655
2656 }
2657 \cs_set :Nn \fontspec_setup_maths :
2658 {
2659
     \@ifpackageloaded{euler}
       \bool_if :NTF \g_@@_pkg_euler_loaded_bool
       { \bool_set_true :N \g_@@_math_euler_bool }
2663
       { \@@_error :n {euler-too-late} }
2664
      }
     2666
     \label{lem:lem:norm} $$ \operatorname{lucidabr}{\boldsymbol :N \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ }(B_0_0_0_0) $$
2667
     \@ifpackageloaded{lucimatx}{\bool_set_true :N \g_@@_math_lucida_bool}{}
```

Knuth's CM fonts fonts are all squashed together, combining letters, accents, text symbols and maths symbols all in the one font, cmr, plus other things in other fonts. Because we are changing the roman font in the document, we need to redefine all of the maths glyphs in LaTeX's operators maths font to still go back to the legacy cmr font for all these random glyphs, unless a separate maths font package has been loaded instead.

In every case, the maths accents are always taken from the operators font, which is generally the main text font. (Actually, there is a \hat accent in EulerFractur, but it's *ugly*. So I ignore it. Sorry if this causes inconvenience.)

```
\DeclareSymbolFont{legacymaths}{OT1}{cmr}{m}{n}
2669
2670 \SetSymbolFont{legacymaths}{bold}{OT1}{cmr}{bx}{n}
2671 \DeclareMathAccent{\acute} {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{19}
2672 \DeclareMathAccent{\grave}
                                   {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{18}
2673 \DeclareMathAccent{\ddot}
                                   {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{127}
2674 \DeclareMathAccent{\tilde}
                                   {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{126}
2675 \DeclareMathAccent{\bar}
                                   {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{22}
2676 \DeclareMathAccent{\breve}
                                   {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{21}
2677
    \DeclareMathAccent{\check}
                                   {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{20}
                                   {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{94} % too bad, euler
2678
    \DeclareMathAccent{\hat}
2679
     \DeclareMathAccent{\dot}
                                   {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{95}
2680
    \DeclareMathAccent{\mathring}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{23}
 \colon: what's going on? Okay, so: and \colon in maths mode are defined in a few
 places, so I need to work out what does what. Respectively, we have :
 % fontmath.ltx:
 \DeclareMathSymbol{\colon}{\mathpunct}{operators}{"3A}
 \DeclareMathSymbol{:}{\mathrel}{operators}{"3A}
 % amsmath.sty:
 \renewcommand{\colon}{\nobreak\mskip2mu\mathpunct{}\nonscript
  \mkern-\thinmuskip{:}\mskip6muplus1mu\relax}
 % euler.sty:
 \DeclareMathSymbol{:}\mathrel {EulerFraktur}{"3A}
 % lucbmath.sty:
 \DeclareMathSymbol{\@tempb}{\mathpunct}{operators}{58}
 \ifx\colon\@tempb
   \DeclareMathSymbol{\colon}{\mathpunct}{operators}{58}
 \fi
 \DeclareMathSymbol{:}{\mathrel}{operators}{58}
 (3A_16 = 58_10) So I think, based on this summary, that it is fair to tell fontspec to 'replace'
 the operators font with legacymaths for this symbol, except when amsmath is loaded since
 we want to keep its definition.
2681
     \group_begin :
       \mathchardef\@tempa="603A \relax
2683
       \ifx\colon\@tempa
         \DeclareMathSymbol{\colon}{\mathpunct}{legacymaths}{58}
       \fi
```

The following symbols are only defined specifically in euler, so skip them if that package is loaded.

```
2687 \bool_if :NF \g_@@_math_euler_bool
2688 {
2689 \DeclareMathSymbol{!}{\mathclose}{legacymaths}{33}}
2690 \DeclareMathSymbol{:}{\mathrel} {legacymaths}{58}
```

2686

\group\_end :

```
2691 \DeclareMathSymbol{;}{\mathpunct}{legacymaths}{59}
2692 \DeclareMathSymbol{?}{\mathclose}{legacymaths}{63}
```

And these ones are defined both in euler and lucbmath, so we only need to run this code if no extra maths package has been loaded.

```
\bool_if :NF \g_@@_math_lucida_bool
2693
         \DeclareMathSymbol{0}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{'0}
2696
         \DeclareMathSymbol{1}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{'1}
         \DeclareMathSymbol{2}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{'2}
         \DeclareMathSymbol{3}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{'3}
         \DeclareMathSymbol{4}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{'4}
         \label{legacymaths} $$ \Declare Math Symbol {5}{\mathcal S}_{\mathcal S}^{1} = {\mathcal S}_{\mathcal S}^{1}. $$
2701
         \DeclareMathSymbol{6}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{'6}
2702
         \DeclareMathSymbol{7}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{'7}
2703
         \DeclareMathSymbol{8}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{'8}
         \DeclareMathSymbol{9}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{'9}
         \DeclareMathSymbol{\Gamma}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{0}
2706
         \DeclareMathSymbol{\Delta}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{1}
         \DeclareMathSymbol{\Theta}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{2}
2707
2708
         \DeclareMathSymbol{\Lambda}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{3}
         \DeclareMathSymbol{\Xi}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{4}
         \DeclareMathSymbol{\Pi}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{5}
2710
         \DeclareMathSymbol{\Sigma}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{6}
2711
         \DeclareMathSymbol{\Upsilon}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{7}
2713
         \DeclareMathSymbol{\Phi}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{8}
         \DeclareMathSymbol{\Psi}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{9}
         \DeclareMathSymbol{\Omega}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{10}
2716
         \DeclareMathSymbol{+}{\mathbin}{legacymaths}{43}
         \DeclareMathSymbol{=}{\mathrel}{legacymaths}{61}
         2718
         2720
         \DeclareMathDelimiter{]}{\mathclose}{legacymaths}{93}{largesymbols}{3}
2721
2722
         \DeclareMathDelimiter{/}{\mathord}{legacymaths}{47}{largesymbols}{14}
2723
         \label{legacymaths} $$ \DeclareMathSymbol{\mathbb{legacymaths}} (36) $$
```

Finally, we change the font definitions for  $\mbox{\mbox{$\mbox{mathrm}$ and so on.}}$  These are defined using the  $\mbox{\mbox{$\s}$}}}}}}}}}}}}}}}$ 

Since LaTeX only generally defines one level of boldness, we omit \mathbf in the bold maths series. It can be specified as per usual with \setboldmathrm, which stores the appropriate family name in \g\_@@\_bfmathrm\_tl.

```
\DeclareSymbolFont{operators}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathrm_tl\mddefault\updefault \SetSymbolFont{operators}{normal}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathrm_tl\mddefault\updefault \DeclareSymbolFontAlphabet\mathrm{operators} \SetMathAlphabet\mathit{normal}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathrm_tl\mddefault\itdefault \SetMathAlphabet\mathbf{normal}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathrm_tl\bfdefault\updefault \SetMathAlphabet\mathsf{normal}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathrf_tl\mddefault\updefault \SetMathAlphabet\mathtt{normal}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathrt_tl\mddefault\updefault \SetMathAlphabet\mathtt{normal}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathrt_tl\mddefault\updefault \SetSymbolFont{operators}{bold}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathrm_tl\bfdefault\updefault}
```

```
2734
            \tl_if_empty :NTF \g_@@_bfmathrm_tl
2736
               \SetMathAlphabet\mathit{bold}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathrm_tl\bfdefault\itdefault
2738
2739
               2740
               2741
               2742
2743
            \sc MathAlphabet \mathbf{1}_{g\_emathsf\_tl}\
2744
           2745 }
  We're a little less sophisticated about not executing the maths setup if various other maths
   font packages are loaded. This list is based on the wonderful 'LATEXFont Catalogue': http:
  //www.tug.dk/FontCatalogue/mathfonts.html. I'm sure there are more I've missed. Do the
  TEX Gyre fonts have maths support yet?
          Untested:would \unless\ifnum\Gamma=28672\relax\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool\fi
  be a better test? This needs more cooperation with euler and lucida, I think.
2746 \cs_new : Nn \fontspec_maybe_setup_maths :
2747 {
2748
           \@ifpackageloaded{anttor}
2749
2750
                 \ifx\define@antt@mathversions a\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool\fi
2751
             \@ifpackageloaded{arev}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
             \@ifpackageloaded{eulervm}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2754
             2755
             \label{local_set_false : N \g_@Q_math_bool}{$\{$} \end{conc} % $$ $$ (a) $$ (a) $$ (a) $$ (b) $$ (a) $$ (b) $$ (b) $$ (b) $$ (c) $$ (c
             \@ifpackageloaded{cmbright}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
             \@ifpackageloaded{mathesf}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2758
             \@ifpackageloaded{gfsartemisia}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2759
             \@ifpackageloaded{gfsneohellenic}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
             \@ifpackageloaded{iwona}
2760
              {
                 \ifx\define@iwona@mathversions a\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool\fi
2763
2764
             \@ifpackageloaded{kpfonts}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
             \@ifpackageloaded{kmath}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
             \@ifpackageloaded{kurier}
2766
2767
2768
                 \ifx\define@kurier@mathversions a\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool\fi
             \@ifpackageloaded{fouriernc}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2770
             \label{local_set_false : N g_@Q_math_bool} $$ \end{fourier} $$$ \end{fourier} $$$ \end{fourier} $$$ \end{fourier} $$$ \end{
             \@ifpackageloaded{lmodern}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
             \@ifpackageloaded{mathpazo}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
            \@ifpackageloaded{MinionPro}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
             \@ifpackageloaded{unicode-math}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
             \@ifpackageloaded{breqn}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
```

\fontspec\_maybe\_setup\_maths :

\bool\_if :NT \g\_@@\_math\_bool

```
2779 {
2780     \@@_info :n {setup-math}
2781     \fontspec_setup_maths :
2782    }
2783 }
2784 \AtBeginDocument{\fontspec_maybe_setup_maths :}
```

### 23.9 Finishing up

Now we just want to set up loading the .cfg file, if it exists.

```
2785 \bool_if :NT \g_@@_cfg_bool
2786 {
2787 \InputIfFileExists{fontspec.cfg}
2788 {}
2789 {\typeout{No~ fontspec.cfg~ file~ found;~ no~ configuration~ loaded.}}
2790 }
```

# 23.10 Compatibility

```
\label{thm:proposed} $$ \end{cases} $$ \end{cases
```

# Huitième partie

# fontspec.lua

```
1 (*lua)
First we define some metadata.
 2 fontspec = fontspec or {}
 3 local fontspec = fontspec
4 fontspec.module = {
5    name = "fontspec",
6    version = "2.3c",
7    date = "2013/05/20",
   description = "Advanced font selection for LuaLaTeX.",
 8
   author = "Khaled Hosny, Philipp Gesang",
 9
10 copyright = "Khaled Hosny, Philipp Gesang",
11 license = "LPPL"
14 local err, warn, info, log = luatexbase.provides_module(fontspec.module)
15
Some utility functions
                 = log or (function (s) luatexbase.module_info("fontspec", s) end)
16 fontspec.log
17 fontspec.warning = warn or (function (s) luatexbase.module_warning("fontspec", s) end)
18 fontspec.error = err or (function (s) luatexbase.module_error("fontspec", s) end)
20 if luatexbase.catcodetables == nil then
21 latexpackage_catcodetable=luatexbase.registernumber("catcodetable@atletter")
23 latexpackage_catcodetable=luatexbase.catcodetables['latex-package']
25 function fontspec.sprint (...)
     tex.sprint(latexpackage_catcodetable, ...)
   The following lines check for existence of a certain script, language or feature in a given
font.
28 local check_script = luaotfload.aux.provides_script
29 local check_language = luaotfload.aux.provides_language
30 local check_feature = luaotfload.aux.provides_feature
   The following are the function that get called from T<sub>E</sub>X end.
31 local function tempswatrue() fontspec.sprint([[\@tempswatrue]]) end
32 local function tempswafalse() fontspec.sprint([[\@tempswafalse]]) end
33 function fontspec.check_ot_script(fnt, script)
if check_script(font.id(fnt), script) then
35
         tempswatrue()
36 else
          tempswafalse()
38 end
39 end
40 function fontspec.check_ot_lang(fnt, lang, script)
```

```
if check_language(font.id(fnt), script, lang) then
41
42
         tempswatrue()
43
      else
44
          tempswafalse()
45
      end
46 end
47 function fontspec.check_ot_feat(fnt, feat, lang, script)
      for _, f in ipairs { "+trep", "+tlig", "+anum" } do
          if feat == f then
49
50
              tempswatrue()
51
              return
52
          end
53
     end
      if check_feature(font.id(fnt), script, lang, feat) then
54
55
          tempswatrue()
56
57
          tempswafalse()
58
      end
59 end
60 local get_math_dimension = luaotfload.aux.get_math_dimension
61 function fontspec.mathfontdimen(fnt, str)
62
      local mathdimens = get_math_dimension(fnt, str)
      if mathdimens then
63
64
          fontspec.sprint(mathdimens)
65
          fontspec.sprint("sp")
66
67
          fontspec.sprint("0pt")
68
      end
69 end
70 (/lua)
```

# Neuvième partie

# fontspec-patches.sty

```
1 (*patches)
2 \ExplSyntaxOn
```

# 23.11 Unicode footnote symbols

This is handled by fixltx2e / LATEX2015 now.

```
3 \cs_if_exist :NF \TextOrMath
4 {
5 % copy official definition :
  \protected\expandafter\def\csname TextOrMath\space\endcsname{%
     \ifmmode \expandafter\@secondoftwo
8
     \else \expandafter\@firstoftwo \fi}
9 \edef\TextOrMath#1#2{%
     \expandafter\noexpand\csname TextOrMath\space\endcsname
     {#1}{#2}}
   % translation of official definition :
    \cs_set :Npn \@fnsymbol #1
14
     \int_case :nnF {#1}
16
17
       {0} {}
        {1} { \TextOrMath \textasteriskcentered* }
18
19
        {2} { \TextOrMath \textdagger\dagger }
       {3} { \TextOrMath \textdaggerdbl\ddagger }
       {4} { \TextOrMath \textsection\mathsection }
21
       {5} { \TextOrMath \textparagraph\mathparagraph }
22
       {6} { \TextOrMath \textbardbl\| }
       {7} { \TextOrMath {\textasteriskcentered\textasteriskcentered}{**} }
24
        {8} { \TextOrMath {\textdagger\textdagger}{\dagger\dagger} }
25
26
        {9} { \TextOrMath {\textdaggerdbl\textdaggerdbl}{\ddagger\ddagger} }
27
28
       { \@ctrerr }
29
    }
30
    }
```

### 23.12 Emph

```
39 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\emph}{\em}
40 \cs_set_eq :NN \emshape \itshape
41 \cs_set_eq :NN \eminnershape \upshape
```

#### 23.13 \-

\- This macro is courtesy of Frank Mittelbach and the  $\LaTeX$ 2 $_{\epsilon}$  source code.

```
42 \DeclareRobustCommand{\-}
43 {
   \discretionary
44
45
      \char\ifnum\hyphenchar\font<\z@
46
             \xlx@defaulthyphenchar
47
           \else
48
             \hyphenchar\font
49
50
           \fi
51
53 \def\xlx@defaulthyphenchar{'\-}
```

### 23.14 Verbatims

Many thanks to Apostolos Syropoulos for discovering this problem and writing the redefinion of LaTeX's verbatim environment and \verb\* command.

```
\fontspec_visible_space : Print U+2434 : OPEN BOX, which is used to visibly display a space character.

54 \cs_new : Nn \fontspec_visible_space :

55 {

56 \font_glyph_if_exist : NnTF \font {"2423}}

57 { \char"2423\scan_stop : }

58 { \fontspec_visible_space_fallback : }

59 }

itspec_visible_space :@fallback If the current font doesn't have U+2434 : OPEN BOX, use Latin Modern Mono instead.

60 \cs_new : Nn \fontspec_visible_space_fallback :

61 {
```

```
61 {
62  {
63    \usefont{\g_fontspec_encoding_tl}{lmtt}{\f@series}{\f@shape}
64    \textvisiblespace
65  }
66 }
```

<code>fontspec\_print\_visible\_spaces : Helper macro to turn spaces (^^20) active and print visible space instead.</code>

```
67\group_begin :
68\char_set_catcode_active :n{"20}%
69\cs_gset :Npn\fontspec_print_visible_spaces :{%
70\char_set_catcode_active :n{"20}%
71\cs_set_eq :NN^^20\fontspec_visible_space :%
72}%
73\group_end :
```

```
\verb Redefine \verb to use \fontspec_print_visible_spaces :.
   \verb*
           74 \def\verb
           75 {
           76 \relax\ifmmode\hbox\else\leavevmode\null\fi
                  \verb@eol@error \let\do\@makeother \dospecials
           78
                  \verbatim@font\@noligs
                  \@ifstar\@@sverb\@verb
           80
           81 }
            82 \def\@@sverb{\fontspec_print_visible_spaces :\@sverb}
               It's better to put small things into \AtBeginDocument, so here we go:
           83 \AtBeginDocument
               \fontspec_patch_verbatim :
               \fontspec_patch_moreverb :
               \fontspec_patch_fancyvrb :
               \fontspec_patch_listings :
           89 }
verbatim* With the verbatim package.
           90 \cs_set :Npn \fontspec_patch_verbatim :
               \@ifpackageloaded{verbatim}
           92
           93
           94
                  \cs_set :cpn {verbatim*}
           95
                   \group_begin : \@verbatim \fontspec_print_visible_spaces : \verbatim@start
           96
           97
           98
           This is for vanilla LATEX.
           99
                  \cs_set :cpn {verbatim*}
           100
                    \@verbatim \fontspec_print_visible_spaces : \@sxverbatim
           104
           105 }
          This is for moreverb. The main listing* environment inherits this definition.
           106\cs_set :Npn \fontspec_patch_moreverb :
           107 {
               \@ifpackageloaded{moreverb}{
           108
                  \cs_set :cpn {listingcont*}
           109
                    \cs_set :Npn \verbatim@processline
                      \thelisting@line \global\advance\listing@line\c_one
           114
                      \the\verbatim@line\par
           115
                    \@verbatim \fontspec_print_visible_spaces : \verbatim@start
           116
```

```
117
118 }{}
119 }
   listings and fancvrb make things nice and easy:
120 \cs_set :Npn \fontspec_patch_fancyvrb :
122 \@ifpackageloaded{fancyvrb}
      \cs_set_eq :NN \FancyVerbSpace \fontspec_visible_space :
124
125
126 }
127 \cs_set :Npn \fontspec_patch_listings :
129 \@ifpackageloaded{listings}
      \cs_set_eq :NN \lst@visiblespace \fontspec_visible_space :
133 }
```

## 23.15 \oldstylenums

**\oldstylenums** This command obviously needs a redefinition. And we may as well provide the reverse \liningnums command.

```
134 \RenewDocumentCommand \oldstylenums {m}
135 {
136  { \addfontfeature{Numbers=OldStyle} #1 }
138 \NewDocumentCommand \liningnums {m}
140      { \addfontfeature{Numbers=Lining} #1 }
141 }
142\left</\mathsf{patches}\right>
```

# Dixième partie fontspec.cfg

```
1 ⟨∗cfg⟩
3 \defaultfontfeatures
4 [\rmfamily,\sffamily]
5 {Ligatures=TeX}
7 \defaultfontfeatures
8 [\ttfamily]
9 {WordSpace={1,0,0},
10 PunctuationSpace=WordSpace}
13 %%% FOR BACKWARDS COMPATIBILITY WITH PREVIOUS VERSIONS %%%
15% Entries here in time may be deleted.
16% Please advise of any problems this causes.
19 \let\newfontinstance\newfontfamily
20
21 (/cfg)
```